



Government of Karnataka

SOCIAL SCIENCE



Standard

2015

Karnataka Textbook Society (R.)

100 Feet Ring Road,
Banashankari 3rd Stage, Bengaluru - 85

PREFACE

The Textbook Society, Karnataka has been engaged in producing new textbooks according to the new syllabi which in turn are designed on NCF – 2005 since June 2010. Textbooks are prepared in 12 languages; seven of them serve as the media of instruction. From standard 1 to 4 there is the EVS, mathematics and 5th to 10th there are three core subjects namely mathematics, science and social science.

NCF – 2005 has a number of special features and they are:

- connecting knowledge to life activities
- learning to shift from rote methods
- enriching the curriculum beyond textbooks
- learning experiences for the construction of knowledge
- making examinations flexible and integrating them with classroom experiences
- caring concerns within the democratic policy of the country
- making education relevant to the present and future needs.
- softening the subject boundaries- integrated knowledge and the joy of learning.
- the child is the constructor of knowledge

The new books are produced based on three fundamental approaches namely. Constructive approach, Spiral Approach and Integrated approach

The learner is encouraged to think, engage in activities, master skills and competencies. The materials presented in these books are integrated with values. The new books are not examination oriented in their nature. On the other hand they help the learner in the all round development of his/her personality, thus help him/her become a healthy member of a healthy society and a productive citizen of this great country, India.

In Social science especially in standard 5 the first chapter deals with the historical, geographical, cultural and local study of the division in which learners live. Chapters on sociology, business studies and commerce are introduced in standard VIII as per the guidelines of NCF-2005. A lot of additional information is given through box items. Learners are encouraged to work towards construction of knowledge through assignments and projects. Learning load of memorizing dates has been reduced to the minimum. Life values have been integrated with content of each chapter.

The Textbook Society expresses grateful thanks to the chairpersons, writers, scrutinisers, artists, staff of DIETs and CTEs and the members of the Editorial Board and printers in helping the Text Book Society in producing these textbooks.

Prof. G. S. Mudambadithaya
Coordinator, Curriculum Revision
and Textbook Preparation
Karnataka Textbook Society
Bengaluru, Karnataka

Nagendra Kumar
Managing Director
Karnataka Textbook Society
Bengaluru, Karnataka

A demand for the change of curriculum, syllabi and textbooks has been heard from parents at every interval of five years. The Government of Karnataka has accepted the demand favourably and revised its Curriculum (KCF 2007) and syllabi in all subjects. As a result of it textbooks are being prepared in various subjects and the result is this Social Science book for standard IX. It has been designed and prepared according to the changed situations in various curricular areas to enable the students to construct knowledge through activities. There are six subject areas namely, History, Political Science, Geography, Economics, Sociology and Business Studies.

The textbook has been prepared keeping in mind the changing situations in rural and urban scenario and at the same time providing opportunities for creativity among learners. A large number of activities and project works have been designed for the purpose. These are designed based on the fact that we live in a world of competition where acquiring knowledge has become the need of the day. The matter has been presented in a simple style and technical words have been glossed. That does not mean that we have succeeded fully in our endeavour though we have followed the basic principles enunciated in NCF 2005.

We express our grateful thanks to all those who gave us concrete suggestions at every stage of preparation of the book. We are grateful to the writers, the scrutiny committee members and translators.

We are especially grateful to the chief coordinator prof. G S Mudambadithaya who has been striving hard in planning and bringing out textbooks of very high standard in all subjects. We express our sincere thanks to the Managing Director, Deputy Director and the coordinator of Social Science book. I also place on record my indebtedness to the Vice Chancellor, Registrar and other colleagues of the University of Tumakuru for their encouragement and guidance.

**Dr. M. Kotresh,
A.S. Dikshit**

Textbook Committee

Chairpersons :

Dr. M. Kotresh, Associate Professor, Department of Studies and Research in History and Archaeology, Tumakuru University, Tumakuru.

Sri A.S. Dikshit, Retd. Principal, Vani Education Centre, Basaveshwaranagar, Bengaluru.

Members :

Dr. Basavaraja N. Akki, Associate Professor, Government First Grade College, Alnavara, Dharwad Tq.

Sri N. Satyaprakash, Head Master, Vidyavardhaka Sangha High School, 1st Block, Rajajinagar, Bengaluru - 10.

Sri T. Ningaiah, Associate Professor Govt. First grade college, Gubbi, Tumakuru District.

Sri B.K. Vasuki, Asst. Master, Vivekananda Tribal Residential High School, B.R. Hills, Chamarajanagar District.

Sri B. Hanumantharao, Lecturer, Govt. Pre-University College, Chikkaballapura.

Sri Kumaraswamy, Principal, Vidyavahini Pre-University College, Tumakuru.

Sri S.H. Kurakundi, Drawing Teacher, Government High School, Masanagi, Byadagi Tq., Haveri District.

Scrutinisers :

Dr. Rajram Hegde, Professor, Department of History, Kuvempu University, Shankaraghatta, Shivamogga.

Prof. T.D. Devegowda, Professor, Department of Political Science, Dean (Study Centres) K.S.O.U. Mysuru.

Dr. Shoukath Azem, Professor, Department of Sociology, Karnataka University, Dharwad.

Prof. P. Mallappa, Retd. Professor, Department of Geography, J.S.S. College, Mysuru.

Dr. S.R. Keshava, Faculty, Department of Economics, Bengaluru University, Bengaluru.

Dr. K.R. Srilakshmi, Associate Professor, Department of Commerce, Government First grade college, 6th Block, Jayanagar, Yadiyur, Bengaluru.

Editorial Board :

Dr. M.V. Srinivas, Retd. Professor, Department of History, Mysore University, Mysuru.

Dr. R.L.M. Patil, Retd. Professor, Department of Political Science, Bengaluru University, Bengaluru.

Dr. Eshwarappa, Professor, Department of Geography, Bengaluru University, Bengaluru.

Translators :

Prof. Geetha Srinivasan, 329/1, 1st Cross, 23rd Main, Sarakhikere Village, 5th Phase, J.P. Nagar, Bengaluru-78.

Smt D.R. Renuka, Assistant Professor, Government First Grade College, B.H. Road, Tumakuru.

Sri N. Satyaprakash, Head Master, Vidyavardhaka Sangha High School, 1st Block, Rajajinagar, Bengaluru - 10.

Chief Co-ordinator :

Prof. G.S. Mudambadithaya, Co-ordinator, Curriculum Revision and Textbook Preparation, KTBS, Bengaluru.

Chief Advisers :

Sri Nagendra Kumar, Managing Director, KTBS, Bengaluru-85

Sri Panduranga, Deputy Director(incharge), KTBS, Bengaluru-85

Programme Co-ordinator :

Sri. A.T. Rangadasappa, Senior Assistant Director, KTBS, Bengaluru-85

Content

Sl. No.	Chapter	Page No.
	HISTORY	
1.	CHRISTIANITY AND ISLAM	1
2.	EUROPE IN THE MIDDLE AGES	6
3.	INDIA FROM 9TH CENTURY A.D. TO 14TH CENTURY A.D.	9
4.	RELIGIOUS REFORMERS OF INDIA	22
5.	VIJAYANAGAR AND BAHAMANI KINGDOMS	28
6.	THE MOGHULS AND THE MARATHAS	45
7.	BHAKTI PANTH	59
8.	MODERN EUROPE	63
9.	REVOLUTION AND RISE OF NATION STATES	74
	POLITICAL SCIENCE	
1.	OUR CONSTITUTION	85
2.	THE UNION GOVERNEMENT	99
3.	STATE GOVERNMENT	116
4.	DEFENCE OF THE NATION	129
5.	NATIONAL INTEGRATION	140
	SOCIOLOGY	
1.	FAMILY	145
2.	SOCIALISATION AND FAMILY RELATIONSHIP	151
3.	CITIES AND OTHER COMMUNITIES	157

GEOGRAPHY

1.	OUR STATE - KARNATAKA	162
2.	PHYSIOGRAPHIC DIVISIONS	166
3.	CLIMATE, SOIL, NATURAL VEGETATION AND ANIMALS OF KARNATAKA	171
4.	WATER RESOURCES OF KARNATAKA	180
5.	LAND RESOURCES OF KARNATAKA	186
6.	MINERAL RESOURCES	196
7.	TRANSPORT	200
8.	INDUSTRIES OF KARNATAKA	207
9.	MAJOR TOURIST CENTERS OF KARNATAKA	214
10.	POPULATION OF KARNATAKA	219

ECONOMICS

1.	ECONOMIC STRUCTURE	223
2.	SECTORS OF INDIAN ECONOMY	229
3.	MONEY AND CREDIT	241
4.	LABOUR AND EMPLOYMENT	251

BUSINESS STUDIES

1.	MANAGEMENT OF BUSINESS	260
2.	FINANCIAL MANAGEMENT	266
3.	MARKETING MANAGEMENT	273
4.	ACCOUNTING IN BUSINESS	286

HISTORY

CHAPTER – 1

CHRISTIANITY AND ISLAM

We learn about the following in this chapter,

- Life of Jesus Christ and Mohammed Prophet.
- the growth of Christianity and Islam.
- the teachings of Christianity and Islam.
- the spread and expansion of Christianity and Islam.

Christianity and Islam are important religions of the world. These religions took birth in Central Asia. They are also known as Semitic religions. These religions are spread in many countries of the world.

Do you know this?

Christianity and Islam are known as religions. 'Religion' means 'the Path of Truth' revealed to the Prophets by the Creator of this earth. Hence, Prophets, Holy Scriptures and the tenets which guide the practice of these religions act as the pillars of these religions. This assumption is limited only to the above-mentioned two religions.

CHRISTIANITY

The birthplace of Jesus is Bethlehem, 5 kilometers away from Jerusalem in Judea province. He was the only son of the poor couple, Joseph and Mary.

Not much is known about his early life. Jesus knew Aramic and Semitic languages. At this time, the Jews were awaiting the arrival of a Messiah, who would save them from their problems. A person named John had predicted this arrival. John was basically a religious preacher. He used to baptise the people who came to him. Even Jesus was baptised by John. John declared Jesus as the Messiah. Jesus was 30 years at that time.



Jesus Christ

Jesus started travelling throughout the country preaching religious philosophy. Over a period of time, Jews chose Jesus as their religious leader. Jesus had 12 disciples. They are called 'Apostles'. Peter was the first apostle.

Jesus sympathised with the downtrodden and those who suffered from diseases. He always came forward to alleviate the suffering of the poor.

Crucifixion of Christ

The Jews considered Jesus as their Messiah and he became very popular. His popularity enraged the Emperor of Rome. Since Jesus began rejecting the religious dogmas, Jew fundamentalists started opposing him.

Due to all these reasons, when Jesus visited Jerusalem, the Jewish soliders arrested him and handed him over to the Governor of Rome and he ordered crucifixion of Jesus. He was crucified on the hillock of Golgotha by the Roman soldiers.

The teachings of Jesus Christ

The preachings of Jesus Christ are very simple to follow. They are told in the form of stories or parables.

1. He told people to imagine God as their Father. He also told that all human beings were Children of the God.
2. He advocated universal brotherhood.
3. He told people to shun hypocritical religious practices.
4. He advised people to repent for their sins and seek forgiveness from the God.
5. He asked people to do unto others what they wanted others to do to them.
6. He equated Service of Man with Service of God.

In this manner, his preachings were based on Love, Service and Brotherhood.

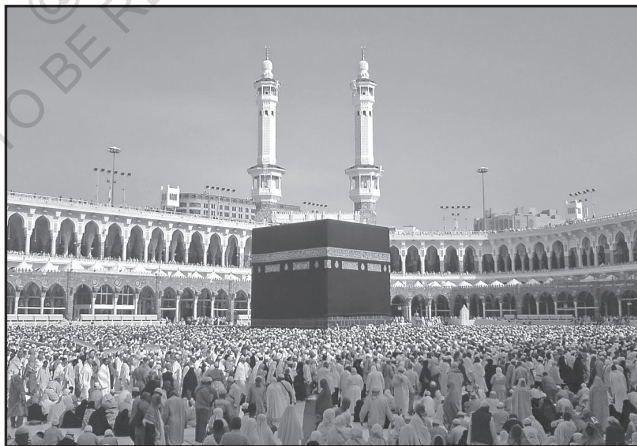
The Spread of Christianity

After the crucifixion of Jesus, his disciples were tortured. Some of them were crucified. During the time of Emperor Constantine, Christianity was adopted as the State Religion. Subsequently, Christianity spread through out Europe. Today, Christian Churches are found through out the world and have a large number of followers. The Bible is the Scripture of this religion.

ISLAM

Prophet Mohammad Paigambar is the founder of Islam. He was born at Mecca in 570 A.D. Abdulla and Aameena were his parents. His father died a few months before Mohammad's birth. He lost his mother when he was six year old. Thereafter, he grew up under the care of his uncle, who was basically a trader. He had to travel long distances for his trade. Mohammad used to accompany him during these travels. After some time, Mohammad joined to service in a rich widow's house. Later, he married that widow. They had two sons and four daughters.

Mohammad had the habit of introspecting and meditating all alone. He used to meditate in a cave in Mecca. Once, while he was meditating, he heard the voice of an angel. The angel said that Mohammad was the Prophet of God (Allah). Later, Mohammad convinced his family members, relatives and



Mecca

friends that he was truly the Prophet. However, he never referred to himself as God, but Prophet of Allah.

The rest of his life Mohammad spent preaching the Divine Gospel. These preachings were compiled by his followers and published in the form of a book. Quran was the Scripture of Islam.

The orthodox community of Mecca began to oppose the Prophet. Due to this, Mohammad Paigambar could not preach in Mecca any more. In the year 622 A.D. he travelled from Mecca to Medina. This journey became popular in history as 'Hijira'. He settled down for some time in Medina. He brought many small tribes of Arabia together. As a result, his strength doubled. He moved to Mecca again with his followers and after some years, breathed his last there.

Philosophy and tenets of Islam (the teachings of Mohammad Paigambar) :

1. Islam believes in monotheism (worship of single God). Allah is their God and Mohammed, his Prophet.
2. Mohammed Paigambar taught that there is no death for the soul and that sinners would attract punishment by fire.
3. Mohammed Paigambar laid emphasis on good behaviour. He said that human beings should try to learn forgiveness.

The rules and regulations to be followed by every Muslim :

1. Firm belief in one God and Mohammed as his Prophet.
2. Praying five times daily facing the direction of Kaba.
3. Fasting during the Ramzan month from sunrise to sunset.
4. Donating one-fourths of their earnings to the poor.
5. Visiting Mecca at least once in their lifetimes.

These five practices are said to be the 'pillars of Islam'.

The successors of Mohammed Paigambar are called 'Caliphs'. The Caliphs became the religious and political leaders of Islam. Abubakar was the first Caliph.

EXERCISES

I. Fill in the blanks with suitable words.

1. The birthplace of Jesus Christ is _____.
2. Christ was crucified on the hillock _____.
3. Christianity became the state religion of Rome during the period of _____.
4. Mohammed Paigambar was born at _____.
5. The scripture of Islam is _____.
6. The successors of Mohammed Paigambar are known as _____.

II. Answer the following questions by discussing with your friends.

1. Write about Life of Jesus Christ.
2. List the teachings of Jesus Christ.
3. How was christianity spread ?
4. Write a note on the life of Mohammed Paigambar.
5. What is 'Hijra'?
6. What are the rules of Islam?

III. Activity :

1. Visit a church and a mosque in your town/village and collect information about their religious celebrations.
2. Learn about the cultural activities of Muslims.
3. Learn about the Ramzan celebrations of Muslims.

IV. Project Work :

1. Write an essay about the spread of Christianity and Islam with the help of your teachers.

EUROPE IN THE MIDDLE AGES

We learn about the following in this chapter,

- the conditions in Europe during the Middle Ages.
- the meaning of feudalism.
- different forms of feudalism.
- the advantages and disadvantages of feudalism.
- the decline of feudalism.

The period of Middle Ages started after the fall of Roman Empire. Cultural bankruptcy was seen for almost one thousand years after the glorious cultural achievements in the history of Greece and Rome. This period is also called the 'Dark Age'. This is an important transitional period in world history. During this period, in addition to rise of barbaric communities, the system of feudalism took birth.

Feudalism

After the fall of Roman Empire, the political and social systems of many of the European countries plunged into chaos. The situation worsened after the death of Roman Emperor, Charlemagne. Anarchy prevailed and there was no protection for life and property. At such a critical period, a new political and economic system took birth in Western Europe. This was feudalism.

Ownership of land which was the core of feudalism, gave economic and political powers to the feudal lords. The status of a person during the Middle Ages depended on the extent of land he owned. Thus, land alone was the means of income. Naturally, the king was the owner of all the land that came under his jurisdiction. The king donated land to the nobles. The nobles donated small areas of land to their subordinates. In a nutshell, the feudal system was an arrangement to gain specific services to the feudal lords.

Activity

Meet your village accountant and learn about the manner in which one can acquire ownership of land.

The feudal system can be considered as an arrangement or an agreement between the powerful and the weak. The person who owned the land was called the noble, whereas the person who maintained the land was called the vassal. In return for protection from the noble, the vassals had to offer certain services.

The feudal system, mainly, centered round give- and- take policy. During the Middle Ages, feudalism became popular in all the sections and institutions of the society in Europe. However, there was no consistency in the nature and type of feudalism in different parts.

Nature and forms of feudalism: (Oath of loyalty)

The land held by the vassals was considered a gift given by the ruler. Feudalism consisted of two important traditions: the first one was 'Investiture'. Under this tradition, the lord gave assurances of justice and protection to the vassal while giving the land. The second one was 'Homage' (handing down of power according to customs): under this tradition, the vassal promised loyalty and service to the feudal lord. There were hierarchies among the feudal lords. Important among them were the Dukes, Earls, Barons, Knights etc. The vassals took the help of labourers for agriculture. These labourers were given land sufficient for survival as long as they worked with the vassals. They were not given any monetary returns.

Do this yourself :

Collect information about the documents needed to prove one's ownership of the land.

Advantages

Simplicity was the most important character of this system. Simple and tailor-made administrative system is the contribution of this system. Guarantee of human protection was evident in this system. The lords or the nobles were dependent on the vassals for military service. Due to this, the ruling party could not become autocratic. The economic system also saw notable progressive changes. The savagery of the barbaric communities was controlled. Mainly, man became aware of his duties and fundamental rights. In addition to this, in England, France and Germany this system encouraged literature. The special contribution of this system was creation of rules and regulations. The nobles got their training through these rules and regulations. This training enabled the nobles to protect women, the weak and the Christian religion.

Disadvantages

Due to the influence of this system, a class of aristocracy came into being. Agreements and disagreements began among the aristocrats, nobles and vassals. As a result of this crisis, the agreements and arrangements of the feudal system failed. Sometimes the nobles started competing with the lords or the kings. Many became traitors and posed a threat to their own regional unity. The judicial system also was full of weaknesses, and there was no rule of law. Above all these, the church and the state were at loggerheads. With each other.

The decline of feudalism

During 15th century, many incidents caused the fall of this system. The rise of powerful dynastic rule in England, France and Spain led to the downfall of the feudal system.

Development of regional languages, nationalism, lust for absolute power among the kings led to the decline of this system. While military power was one reason for the decline of this system, the Crusades hastened the fall of many systems. Later, the Renaissance and Reformation became the main reason for the weakening of the feudal system.

EXERCISES

I. Fill in the blanks with suitable words.

1. The cultural bankruptcy of Europe is called _____.
2. The owner of the land was called _____.
3. The person who maintained the land was called _____.
4. The weak person who was responsible for the maintenance of land was called _____.

II. Answer the following.

1. What is feudal system?
2. List the advantages and disadvantages of the feudal system.
3. Enumerate the reasons for the downfall of the feudal system.

INDIA FROM 9TH TO 14TH CENTURY A.D.

We learn about the following in this chapter,

- the Rajput dynasties that ruled in North India.
- the contributions of the Rajput kings to literature, art and architecture.
- the consequences of the attacks of Mahmood Ghazni and Mohammed Ghori
- The establishment of the Delhi Sultanate, their administration and their contributions

Certain dynasties ruled between 9th and 14th centuries in India. After the dynasty of Vardhana, Rajput families ruled in North India. Subsequently, Mahmood Ghazni, Mohammed Ghori and the Delhi Sultans ruled over many parts of India.

RAJPUTS

Gurjara Pratihars, Garhwalas, Paramars, Chauhans, Solankis and Chandela Rajput families ruled in North India. They have contributed a lot to literature, art and architecture.

Gurjara Pratihars : Harichandra started the Gurjara dynastic rule. His four sons ruled the different branches of Pratihars at Jodhpur, Nandipur, Broach and Ujjain. Among these, Nagabhatta who ruled Ujjain was prominent and successful in facing the Arab invasion. He extended his territory upto some portion of Rajputan, beyond Gujarat and Malwa. Another prominent king, Mihir Bhoj, defeated Narayanpala of the Palas and expanded his kingdom. The Arab travellers, Suleiman and Al Masood visited his court. After Mahendra Pala and Mahipala, this dynasty began to decline.

Garhwalas : The founder of this dynasty was Chandradeva. He conquered a vast area of North India. Govindachandra was another famous king of this dynasty. He not only seized Magadha and Malwa from the Palas but also fought against Orissa and Kalinga kings and expanded his kingdom. He had good diplomatic relations with the Kashmir, Gujarat and Chola kings.

Paramaras : Upendra Krishna Raja was the founder of this dynasty. Their capital was Dhara of Malwa. King Shiyak of this dynasty defeated Kottiga II of the Rashtrakutas and freed himself from his feudatory position. He constructed many tanks and temples. Dhananjaya, Bhatta Halayuddha, Dhanika and Padmagupta were the scholars in his court.

Chauhans : This dynasty was the most prominent among the Rajput dynasties. Prithviraj Chouhan who hailed from Ajmer, was the most famous king of this dynasty. He defeated Chandelas king of Bundelkhand. He defeated Mohammed Ghori in the first battle of Terrain but lost in the second battle of Terrain because of the treachery of Jayachandra. Due to this, he lost his kingdom of Delhi to Mohammed Ghori. Prithviraj Chouhan was known for his bravery and adventurous nature, and he has been commemorated in the Hindi epic, 'Prithvirajaraso'. Some of his unwise decisions led to his downfall.



Prithviraj Chauhan

Solankis : Mularaja I was the founder of this dynasty. Bheemaraya I was the famous king of this dynasty. During his rule, Mohammed Ghazni attacked the Somnath Temple of Gujarat. Since he could not resist the attack of Mohammed Ghazni, Bheemaraya I handed over the power to his son Karnadeva. During this dynastic rule the famous Jain scholar Hemachandra, wrote a dictionary in Prakrit language called 'Deshinamamala'. Mularaja II defeated Mohammed Ghori near Mount Abu. Subsequently, Allauddin Khilji's commanders Ulugh Khan and Nusrat Khan defeated Karnadeva and took over this province.

Chandelas : After the decline of Paramars, Chandelas established their kingdom. They were the feudal kings of Pratihars. Dhanga was the famous king of this dynasty. He declared himself free from the Pratihars and occupied the eastern portion of their kingdom. He defeated the Palas and the Adras and expanded his kingdom. He

gave military assistance to Hindu Shahi king Jayapala against Muslims. He was bestowed the title 'Maharajadhiraja'. During his rule Bhavabhooti wrote the poetic works 'Malati Madhava', 'Uttara Ramacharitha' and 'Mahavira Charitha' in Sanskrit. The king Dhanga was a scholar himself and had a number of scholars. His kingdom was taken over by the Khilji sultans. Hatred and lack of unity among the Rajput kings led to their decline.

The contributions of Rajputs

The Rajputs were Kshatriyas and brave warriors. They celebrated many Hindu festivals. During their rule, women enjoyed equal status with men. Sati and johar practices were prevalent in this period. Swayamvar marriages were common in royal families. The Rajput ladies were proud and brave. Women were well-versed in literature, dance, music, painting and embroidery.

The Rajput kings encouraging scholars, have contributed a lot to the field of literature. The Rajput kings Bhoja and Munja were scholars themselves. King Munja had poets Padmagupta and Halayudha in his court. During the rule of Bhojaraja great Jain scholars like Shantisena, Prabhachandrasuri and Ghanapala enjoyed his patronage. Great poetic works like 'Gita Govinda' of Jayadeva, 'Kiratarjuniya' of Bharavi, Ravanavadha of Bharthrahari, Kavyameemamsa of Mahendrapala were written in this period. Dramas like 'Balaramayana' and 'Karpuramanjari' of Rajasekhara, 'Mahavira Charita' and 'Uttara Ramacharita' of Bhavabhuti, historical works like 'Rajatarangini' of Kalhana, 'Prithvirajavijaya' of Jayanika and 'Kumarapalacharita' of Hemachandra are the significant works of this period. 'Prithvirajraso' was written by Chand Bardai and 'Bhoja prabandha' was written by Ballala. During this period Gujarati, Rajasthani and Hindi languages saw lot of development. The Rajput kings encouraged the educational centers of Nalanda, Banaras, Vikramashila and Ujjain.

Art and Architecture

The Rajput kings constructed massive forts at Chittoda, Mandu, Ranathambore, Jodhpur and Gwalior in North India. The palaces of

Jaipur, Gwalior and Udaipur, and Dilawar temple at Mount Abu, Vimalavasai, Lunavasai temples are artistic architectural constructions. The Chandelas built the famous Khajuraho and Khandaraya temple at Madhya Pradesh. Shiva and Vishnu temples were prominent constructions during their time. They encouraged painting too. Their style of painting is called 'Rajasthani' and 'Pahari' schools of paintings. The Rajasthani style of painting can be seen at Mewar, Bikaner, Jodhpur, Jaisalmer and Bhuni. Pahari style of painting can be seen at Khasoli, Jammu and Garhwal.



Mount Abu basadi

Do you know this ? Rajput traditions :

Swayamvar : *In ancient times, there was the practice of a princess selecting one of the princes as her husband from the invited princes.*

Rakshabandhan : *Rajput ladies tied bands on the wrists of male members and treated them like brothers. Such men treated them as sisters and protected them.*

Mahamood Ghazni : (997 – 1030 A.D.)

Alaptigin, the Turkish slave established an independent kingdom at Ghazni. Mahmood Ghazni invaded India 17 times and looted a lot of wealth. He defeated Multan king, Raja Jaipala, Bhimapala and Chandela King Raja Trilochanapala. He attacked Nagarakote, Thaneswar, Gwalior and Ujjain cities.

Mahmood Ghazni attacked the famous Somnath temple of Gujarat with a huge army and plundered the great wealth therein after destroying the Shivalinga. Mahmood Ghazni's invasions of India led to subsequent invasions by Turks.

Mahmood Ghazni encouraged poets, scholars and the fine arts. A scholar in his court, Alberuni, wrote the famous 'Tarik-ul-hind'. Indian lifestyle and knowledge have been discussed in this work.

Mohammed Ghori

Mahamood Ghazni failed to establish Turkish rule in India, Mohammed Ghori continued this effort. Ambitious of expanding his kingdom, Mohammed Ghori started his invasions through Multan in India. After conquering the province of Multan, he invaded Anilwada of Gujarat. He failed in this effort. Undeterred, he invaded Peshawar part of Punjab. Later, after wresting Lahore from Khusro Malik, he became very powerful in Punjab. Peshawar became his military headquarters. He tried to invade adjacent areas of Delhi and Ajmer, and lost to Rajput king, Prithviraj Chouhan in the first battle of Terrain. In the second battle of Terrain, he defeated Prithviraj. The commander of Ghori, Qutubuddin Aibak, took control of Delhi and defeated many Rajput kings in the Ganga plains and expanded Ghori's kingdom. In this manner, the Turkish rule began in North India. Mohammed Ghori appointed his trusted servant Qutubuddin Aibak to look after his administration in India. Lack of unity among Rajput rulers in India led to expansion of Ghori's kingdom.

DELHI SULTANATE (1206 – 1526 A.D.)

Ghulam, Khilji, Tughlaq, Sayed and Lodhi dynasties ruled Delhi.

GHULAM DYNASTY

Qutubuddin Aibak continued his rule in India. Since Aibak and his successors were all slaves, their dynasty came to be known as Ghulam dynasty.

Qutubuddin Aibak

Qutubuddin Aibak laid a solid foundation for the Delhi Sultanate rule in India. Qutubuddin who belonged to Turkish dynasty of Afghanistan, was sold to the Khaji of Nishapur by his guardians. In addition to Persian and Arabic language education, Aibak had the training in archery, horse riding and warfare. The Governor of Ghazni, Mohammed Ghori, bought him as a slave. Aibak, during his stay at Ghazni, attracted the attention of Mohammed Ghori by his bravery.

After the II war of Terrain, he supervised the invasions of India. During the period of Mohammed Ghori, Aibak became his successor in North India. After Ghori, he ruled as an independent king. In order to consolidate his position, on assuming power, he had marital relations with Iltamush and Nasiruddin Kabaccha. In addition to this he married the daughter of Tajuddin Yeldoj. While Nasiruddin and Tajuddin were Mohammed Ghori's slaves, Iltamush was Aibak's slave. Aibak constructed Quwat-ul-Islam mosque in Delhi. He began the construction of Qutub Minar in Delhi. There were the scholars, Nizami and Faq-E-Mudabbeer in his court. A work called 'Tajul Masir' gives all information about Aibak.

Iltamush

Iltamush belonged to the family of 'Ilbari' and was Qutubuddin Aibak's slave. He was Gwalior's administrator and later became Aibak's successor.

Unable to tolerate the progress of Iltamush, the Ghazni king Tajuddin Yeldoj and, Sindh's Nasiruddin Kabacha revolted against him. After defeating them and consolidating his position, Iltamush conquered Ranathambore, Mandora, Gwalior, Bhilsa, Ajmer, Benares and Kanauj. For the first time, the Mongol Emperor Chengiz Khan invaded India. Iltamush successfully forced them to retreat. As a result of these achievements, the Khalif of Baghdad honoured Iltamush with a letter bestowing administrative power.

Iltamush divided his kingdom into provinces (ikta) and to oversee the administration, appointed provincial officers (ikhtadars). He



Qutub Minar

Do you know this?

Qutub Minar is the tallest tower in India. It is located in Delhi. The construction was started by Qutubuddin Aibak and completed by Iltamush. It is 225 ft. in height with delicate carvings. There are 5 floors in the building with steps leading to them.

appointed a group of 40 Sardars to advise him in the matters of administration and justice. The Prime Minister and the judges were advisors to the Sultan. Iltamush brought gold and silver coins into circulation. He completed the construction of Qutub Minar which was started in Qutubuddin Aibak's time.

Razia Sultan

Since Iltamush's son Ruknuddin Feroze was incompetent, his daughter Razia Begum became his successor. She was the first woman to ascend the throne of Delhi. She earned the title of 'Sultana' and participated in military activities by wearing a man's dress. She expanded her kingdom from Sindh to Bengal. Envious of her prosperity, the provincial officers revolted against her and killed her.

Ghiyas Uddin Balban

Balban was Iltamush's slave and was a member of the 'Turkish group of slaves' by his loyalty, intelligence and good qualities. In the court of Razia Sultana, he was appointed as Amir-E-Shikhar.

He controlled the disobedient Turkish sardars. He thwarted the Mongolian attack and established peace and order in the kingdom. He brought tradition and discipline in the court. He used to wear ostentatious Persian style of clothes. He declared himself a representative of the God and brought absolute monarchy into practice. Under the leadership of experienced and trustworthy commanders, he reconstituted his army. He took back the land from those who did not pay service tax for the land they had received as jahagir (gift). To repel the attack of Mongols, he constructed forts in the northwest direction of Delhi. After the decline of the able Balban, the Sultan Qaiqubad got assassinated by his minister. With that, the Slave dynasty ended.

KHILJI DYNASTY (1290 A.D.- 1320 A.D.)

Khilji dynasty was established by Jalaluddin. He was soft-spoken and merciful. This emboldened his sardars (lieutenants) to conspire against him. Later, he was killed by Allauddin who became the Sultan of Delhi.

Allauddin Khilji : Allauddin Khilji grew up under the protection of Jalaluddin. As a brave soldier, he served as the governor and

commander. As a commander-in-chief, he looted vast wealth in the attacks on Malwa, Bhilsa and Devagiri. This helped him to plot and murder his guide and mentor, Jalaluddin. Thus Allauddin became the Sultan of Delhi.

Allauddin not only resisted Mongol attack but also defeated many of the kings in North and South India and plundered a lot of wealth. He defeated the kings of Waghela dynasty, the Rajput king Karnadeva II, Ranathambore's Hamirdeva and Raja Bhimsingh of Chittor. In addition to this, he conquered Malwa, Jalore, Bundi, Mandore and Tonk.

The credit for successful invasion of South India goes to Allauddin's commander Malik Kafur. He invaded Devagiri, Warangal, Dwarasamudra and Madurai became the cause for their destruction. He did not merge these provinces with his kingdom but only looted their wealth. His third son, Qutubuddin Mubarak, ruled for four years and was killed by a soldier called Khusro. Later, Ghazi Malik (Ghiyasuddin Tughlaq) assassinated Khusro and established Tughlaq dynasty.

Administrative reforms : Allauddin Khilji brought about many reforms in the administration. He abolished religious endowments, inams (gifts), land and subsidy. He established efficient intelligence network. He abolished consumption of alcohol, drugs and gambling. He also banned social gatherings of his lieutenants, their socialization with the public and inter-caste marriages. He directed his lieutenants to collect heavy tax from the public.

Military reforms : The appointment of soldiers, their training, arms and ammunitions, horses and payment of salary was the responsibility of the Defence Minister. Records of soldiers and their horses were maintained systematically. He brought in the practice of stamping of horses. He built forts at strategic places.

Commercial reforms : He fixed the price of essential commodities like pulses and cereals, edible oil, sugar, salt, cloth and others with a minimum profit. He directed the traders to sell products at controlled rates. He appointed a higher officer called "Sahana-E-Mandi" to control the markets.

Do you know this?

Do-ab : The land between two rivers is called Do-ab. Ex. Ganga-Yamuna Doab.

TUGHLAQ DYNASTY (1320 A.D. TO 1399 A.D.)

Ghiyasuddin established the Tughlaq dynasty. Mohammed bin Tughlaq and Feroze Tughlaq were prominent in this dynasty. Ghiyasuddin established peace and order in Delhi through liberal administrative practices. He strengthened the borders of his kingdom to stall the invasion by Mongols. He constructed irrigation canals and reduced land tax on farmers. He started the postal system through horsemen and foot-soldiers. He constructed the famous court of Tughlaqabad near Delhi. He conquered Warangal and Madurai. Later, he established peace and order in Gujarat and Bengal.

Mohammad bin Tughlaq

Mohammad bin Tughlaq was well-versed in Persian and Arabic languages. He also had the knowledge of mathematics, physics, medicine, Persian literature and astronomy. In spite of his vast knowledge, he had many flaws in his character. He lacked common sense, understanding, tolerance, mental balance, farsightedness and ability to take pragmatic decisions.

Administrative reforms :

Revenue reforms : He compiled a detailed record of land taxes pertaining to land holdings. He established the Department of Agriculture. Uncultivated land was utilized for farming and other purposes.

He rendered financial help to the farmers. He increased the taxes in do-ab areas.

Shifting of his capital : Mohammad bin Tughlaq shifted his capital from Delhi to Devagiri in Madhya Pradesh. The main purpose of this exercise was to locate the capital in the centre of the kingdom and also ensure protection from invasion by outsiders. Though his idea was good, inability to make suitable arrangements for the implementation resulted in innumerable people suffering a lot of problems.

Practice of symbolic coins: Mohammad bin Tughlaq had gold and silver coins made according to the prevailing price. He brought into

Do you know this?

Taxes :

1. *Kharaj – land tax on non Muslims*
2. *Ushra – Agricultural tax on Muslims*
3. *Zakhat-Property tax on Muslim subjects*
4. *Jiziya – Religious tax on Hindus*

circulation gold coins called 'dinar' and silver coins called 'adali'. He had them artistically structured. After some years, he brought in copper and brass symbolic coins into circulation.

Minting of coins was not the monopoly of the government. Thus, when even common people began minting coins, chaos resulted. Expensive administrative practices, severe famine, shifting of the capital and its re-shifting emptied the coffers of the kingdom.

Deccan Policy: Mohammad bin Tughlaq carried on his administration in the areas he had conquered in the Deccan. He took over Warangal of the Kakatiya's and vanquished the capital of the Hoysalas, Dwarasamudra. He conquered Madurai in South India and appointed Jalaluddin Hasansha as the governor for its administration. In this manner, Mohammad bin Tughlaq became the first of the Delhi Sultans to establish his vast empire in India.

Mohammad bin Tughlaq assembled a very large army without any farsightedness. As he did not try to expand his empire by invasions, he caused a heavy loss to the state exchequer. During the last 11 years of his rule, there were about 27 rebellions in South India which led to the rise of Vijayanagar and Bahamani kingdoms.

After the decline of Mohammad bin Tughlaq, Firoze Shah Tughlaq took up many projects for the welfare of his subjects. With a view to helping the subjects, he waived the takkavi loans. He paid compensation to the people who had suffered during Mohammad bin Tughlaq's rule. He abolished about 20 taxes. Private mines and irrigation facilities were taxed.

Do this yourself :

List and compare the administrative departments in present-day Karnataka and during the period of the Delhi Sultans.

He constructed cities, mosques, madrasas, dams and canals. The main cities which he built were Jonpur, Fatehbad, Hissar, Firozpur and Firozabad. Jonpur was a famous center for learning. He built choultries for the benefit of tourists and travelers.

SAYYED DYNASTY (1414 A.D. – 1451 A.D.)

After conquering Delhi, the governor of Multan, Khizarkhan Sayyed, established his rule in do-ab, Bian and Gwalior. He suppressed the rebels and established peace and order. Mohammad

Shah, Allauddin and Alam Shah were the prominent rulers of this dynasty. Alam Shah was defeated by Bahulol Lodhi, thus putting an end to the Sayyed dynasty rule.

LODHI DYNASTY (1451 A.D. – 1526 A.D.)

This is the last Sultanate to rule Delhi. Bahulol Lodhi, Sikander Lodhi and Ibrahim Lodhi were the sultans of this dynasty. Sikander Lodhi conquered Bihar, Bengal, Dholpur and Chanderi kingdoms. He established peace and order in Delhi.

His successor, Ibrahim Lodhi was incompetent. His governors, Alam Khan and Daulat Khan, invited the Afghans to invade India. Thus, Babar invaded India and in the First Battle of Panipat in 1526 A.D., defeated Ibrahim Lodhi and established Moghul Rule.

The Contributions of the Delhi Sultanate

Administrative system : The Delhi Sultans, being dictatorial, were Commandants of their Armies and the Chief Justices too. The Sultan's rule was according to the doctrines of the Quran. The Sardars, Amirs and Ulemas had their influence in the administration. In the central administration, there were Defence Ministry, Foreign Ministry, Postal Department, Charity and Endowment Boards. They were headed by ministers and officials. The kingdom was divided in to many provinces. The administrative centers were headed by Shikdar, Amin and Chowkidars. Collection of revenue, establishment of peace, education facility and maintenance of cleanliness were their main responsibilities.

During the Sultan's rule, kharaj (land tax), zakhat, ushr, khums (tax on plundered wealth) and jaziya, tax on property without heirs, import duty, house tax and others were the main sources of income. There were officials for collection of taxes. Qazis helped Sultans in dispensing justice in provinces and towns.

Social system: There were religious restrictions on Hindu and Shia subjects under the rule of the Sultans. Only Muslim sardars were appointed to high posts. The Sultans had appointed Hindu Revenue officials and clerks to help them in the administration. Skilled craftsmen and architects were appointed to help in construction of buildings.

Slavery flourished during the reign of the Sultans. Prisoners of war were made slaves. There were many female slaves in the palace. Women did not enjoy good status. Purdah system and child marriage were in practice. Upper class women were well-versed in fine arts. Rural womenfolk were engaged in agriculture and household activities.

Economic system: People were taxed heavily. Since transportation facility was not good, taxes were not uniform. Agriculture was the main source of income. The Sultans owned factories in Delhi. Manufacture of gold and silver jewellery, embroidery, textiles and dyeing were the major industries.

Literature: Foreign writers and historians enjoyed the patronage of the Sultan. Their works are in Arabic and Persian languages. Mohammad Ghazni's court had a famous scholar called Alberuni. He was a philosopher, mathematician, geographer and writer. He wrote a book called 'Tariq-ul-Hind' dealing with Indian social, economic and religious topics. A scholar called Utbi wrote 'Tariq-E-Yamini' in Arabic. Hasan Nijami wrote 'Tajul Masir', Minhaj-us-siraj wrote 'Tabakhal-E-Nasiri'. Amir Khusro wrote six prominent works giving details about Hindu and Muslim culture. He was called 'The Parrot' of India. Ziauddin Barani wrote 'Tariq-E-Firozeshahi' and Firoze Tughlaq wrote 'Futuh-at-E-Firozeshahi'.

Art and Architecture: The Delhi Sultans introduced a new style of architecture known as 'Indo-Islamic'. Arches, domes and minarets form the main features of this style. The Delhi sultans constructed forts, mosques, palaces, public buildings, madrasas and choultries.



Alai Darwaza



Khuwat-ul-Islam

Examples of Indo-Islamic style are: Kuwat-ul-Islam mosque, Qutub Minar, Alai Darwaza and Jamait Khana mosques at Delhi.

EXERCISES

I. Fill in the blanks with suitable words.

1. The founder of Gurjara-Pratihara Rajput dynasty was _____.
2. Prithviraj Chauhan defeated _____ in the first battle of Terrain.
3. The chief commander of Mohammad Ghori was _____.
4. The first woman to rule among the Delhi Sultans was _____.
5. The famous Sultan of the Khilji dynasty was _____.
6. The capital was shifted from Delhi to _____ during the rule of the Tughlaq.

II. Answer the following questions.

1. Explain the contributions of the Rajput kings in the field of literature.
2. Describe in brief the administrative system under Iltamush.
3. What are the administrative reforms of Allauddin Khilji?
4. What are the administrative reforms brought in practice by Mohammad bin Tughlaq?
5. Give an example for the contributions of the Delhi Sultans to art and architecture.
6. What was the result of the First Battle of Panipat?

III. Activities.

1. Identify the Rajput kingdoms in a map of India.
2. Mark the places the Delhi Sultans won in a map of India.

IV. Project Work.

With the help of your teacher, collect pictures and information about the monuments constructed by the Delhi Sultans and prepare an album.

RELIGIOUS REFORMERS OF INDIA

We learn about the following in this chapter,

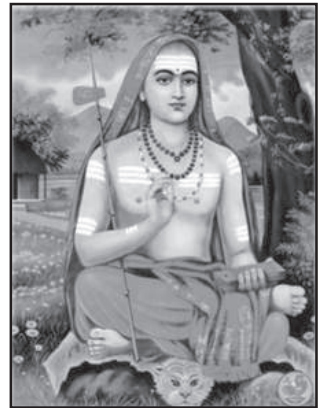
- India's religious reformers and their philosophy and teachings.
- the life and teachings of Shankaracharya, Madhvacharya, Ramanujacharya and Basavanna.
- the principles of Dwaita, Adwaita and Vishistadwaita.

During the 9th century, there were many castes, traditions and philosophies in India. Famous religious reformers propagated the ancient Hindu way of life in their own ways. As a result of this, Bhakti Panth or the Path of Devotion came into existence. Religious reformers are proof of the abundant religious philosophical wealth and freedom of expression among Hindu, between 9th to 14th century A.D., religious leaders like Shankaracharya, Ramanujacharya, Madhwacharya and Basaweshwara instituted religious reforms which led to an intellectual revolution.

Shankaracharya

Shankaracharya was born in the village Kaladi in Kerala in a Namboodari Brahmin family. His father was Shivaguru and mother, Aryamba. Shankara was very intelligent. At the age of seven, he had mastered all the Scriptures. He learnt Vedas and the Puranas from his teacher, Govinda Bhagavatpada.

Shankaracharya studied the Upanishads and Brahmasutras in depth and propagated the Advaita philosophy. According to this, Brahma is the absolute truth, the rest of the world is false. The soul is one with Brahma, and life is not separate from Brahma. The world is maya, an illusion; Brahma is the absolute truth. People are ignorant; they are not aware of the illusory nature of the world. They are also not aware that Brahma is the only Truth. Hence we should go on the path of knowledge, and realize the nature of the world. Ultimately, we should merge our 'atma' (soul) with the absolute truth, Brahma.



Shankaracharya

Only then we can attain moksha (liberation). In this manner, Shankaracharya taught the path of knowledge.

The human soul has no separate existence and he expressed this fact in the phrase 'Aham Brahmasmi'. He declared that Brahma is Truth. It has no qualities, no features and no shape (nirguna, nirakara, nirvikara).

The works of Shankaracharya : Shankarabhasya, Anandalahari, Soundaryalahari, Shivanandalahari, Vivekachoodamani, Prabuddhasudhakara and Dakshinamurthy stotra. His hymn Bhajagovindam is world famous.

Shankaracharya travelled from Kanyakumari to Kashmir on foot and propagated his Advaita philosophy. In order to spread the message of his philosophy, he established peethas (institutions) in all the four directions.

The four mutts or peethas are :

- | | |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. Badarinath - Jyotirpeeth | 2. Dwaraka - Kalikapeeth |
| 3. Puri - Govardhan Peeth | 4. Sringeri - Sharadapeeth |

Shankaracharya gave Indian thinking a new direction and inspiration.

Ramanujacharya

Ramanujacharya was born in Sriperumbadur near Chennai. His father was Keshavasomayaji and mother Kantimati. He learnt the Vedas and Upanishads from Yadavaprakasha in Kanchi – the famous educational center in South India. Subsequently, he travelled to Srirangam and became the Peethadheesha of that mutt. The Shaivite Chola king troubled Ramanujacharya repeatedly. At that time, the Hoysala king of Karnataka, Vishnuvardhan invited him to Karnataka. Ramanujacharya travelled to Melukote and established the Cheluvanarayanaswamy temple.



Ramanujacharya

Ramanujacharya showed keen interest in teaching the mukti marga to common people. After settling down at Sriranga, Ramanujacharya studied the Scriptures and wrote many books. He wrote Vedanta Sangraha, Vedantasara, Vedanta Deepika, Shribhasya and in his famous work 'Geethabhashya', he emphasized the importance of devotion.

Ramanujacharya's philosophy is called 'Vishitadvaita' and the religion he propagated is called 'Shrivaishnavism'. Hence, his followers are called Shrivaishnavites.

Ramanujacharya taught that life and nature were controlled by Brahma. Atma and Paramatma cannot exist at the same time. Devotion and surrender (prapatti) were essential for attaining moksha. Ramanujacharya condemned casteism and taught the path of devotion to people of all castes. He advised that we should give up our desires and surrender to God. He advocated attainment of nirvana through the path of devotion.

Saint Ramananda and Rayidasa of North were influenced by his philosophy. As a result, the path of devotion or Bhakti marga became popular in North India too. The Tuluva kings of Vijayanagar and the Araveedu kings became the followers of Srivaishnavism.

Do you know this?

Famous mutts of Srivaishnavism in South India :

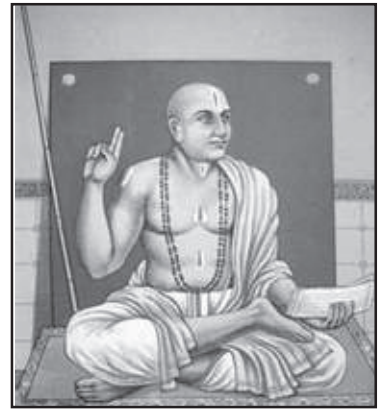
- | | |
|---------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1. Yatiraja mutt | - Melukote and Sriperumbadur |
| 2. Parakala (Brahmatantra) mutt | - Mysuru |
| 3. Ahobala mutt | - Ahobala (Guntur, Andhra Pradesh) |
| 4. Aandavan mutt | - Srirangam |
| 5. Vamaimalai mutt | - Suchindram |

Madhwacharya

Madhwacharya was born in Pajaka village near Udipi in Karnataka. His father was Madhwagehabhatta and mother Vedavati. Lord Vishnu was their family deity. It is said that at a very tender age, he displayed abundant knowledge. He had his education in Vedas and Upanishads from Achyutaprekshaka. The same teacher later inducted Madhwacharya into sanyasa. While studying under his guru, Madhwacharya independently gained great knowledge

about the religious scriptures and defeated his guru in debate. He advocated Dwaitha philosophy. According to this philosophy, the human soul and the Divine soul are separate.

In order to propagate his philosophy, Madhwacharya took to travelling to various places and participated in debates. He brought Lord Krishna's idol which was hidden in a muddy hillock called Gopichandana and installed it in Udupi. Further, to enable regular worship of Lord Krishna, he established 8 mutts called the Ashthamaths.



Madhwacharya

Do you know this?

Ashtha mutts : Palimaru, Adamaru, Krishnapura, Puttige, Shirur, Sode, Kaniyoor and Pejavar mutts.

According to Madhwacharya, the world is not maya or illusion. It is as true as Paramatma or the Divine Soul. Between these, the Divine soul is independent and the rest of the world is illusionary. The Divine soul and the human soul have a Lord and Servant relation. Lord Vishnu or Narayana alone is supreme. Worship of Lord Vishnu can elevate the human soul and thus enable it to attain moksha.

Works of Madhwacharya : Geetabhyaasa, Geetatatparya nirnaya, Mahabharata tatparya nirnaya, Vishnutatva nirnaya, Bhagawata tatparya nirnaya, Sutrabhashya, Mayavadakhandana etc.

Prominent among the disciples of Madhwacharya who propagated the Dwaitha philosophy are Padmanabhateertha, Narahariteertha, Vijayendrateertha and Vadirajateertha.

Basaveshwara

Basaveshwara was the son of Madarasa and Madalambika of Basavanabagewadi in Vijayapura district. He learnt Sanskrit and Kannada very well. After his thread ceremony, he went to Kudala Sangama. There he took linga diksha from a Shaiva saint and meditated for a long period. He reformed Veerashaivism. Through his dedication to work, he became the treasurer of King Bijjala of

Kalachur. During this period, he began his social and religious reforms at Mangalawede.

Basaveshwara preached that Shivasharana should not indulge in caste discrimination. Pure devotion is the true way of reaching Lord Shiva. Everyone should work and earn his living. He preached dignity of labour. He advocated the work policy for the development of society. Basavanna's aim was to inspire people to develop the habit of working. He declared that 'Work is Worship' and tried to implement it totally.



Basaveshwara

Basavanna established a Sharana spiritual institution called 'Anubhava Mantapa' at Basavakalyana in Bidar district. There he used to discuss social, economic and religious problems without discriminating between castes or gender. He advocated equality and independence for women. The ideas emerging from his discussions were made to reach the communities through vachanas. Thus in this vachana propagation, all sects of people joined him irrespective of caste. Prominent among his disciples are Allama Prabhu, Akka Mahadevi, Siddarama, Molige Maraiah, Ambigara Chowdiah, Madiwala Machiah, Madara Chennaiah, Haralayya and Kinnari Bommaiah.

The vachanakaras gave emphasis to human values in their vachanas and reformed the Veershaiva sect. They gave importance to disciplined and moral life. They advocated a life of generosity and kindness.

The vachanakaras highlighted the fact that all human beings are equal. Nobody is an untouchable by birth. They become untouchables by their wrong speech and conduct. The vachanakaras attempted, through their vachanas, to create awareness about the wrong practices during their times.

Do you know this ?

In one of his vachanas, Basavanna reiterates the fact that every individual, irrespective of his social or economic status, caste or gender, is eligible for the God's kindness and moksha. Realising the God is not impossible for anyone since Shiva resides in us.

Basavanna's followers established hundreds of mutts in order to encourage education and bring about social reform.

EXERCISES

I. Fill in the blanks with suitable words :

1. Shankara was born at _____ in Kerala.
2. "The world is an illusion, Brahma alone is the Truth". This statement was declared by _____
3. Ramanujacharya's disciples are called _____.
4. Proponent of Dwaita philosophy is _____.

II. Answer the following questions by discussing with your group :

1. Who is the proponent of Advaita philosophy?
2. Which is the philosophy advocated by Ramanujacharya? What is their sect called?
3. Name the books written by Ramanujacharya.
4. Which are the tenets advocated by Madhwacharya?
5. Write a note on the 'Work is Worship' philosophy of Basavanna.
6. Who established Anubhava Mantapa? What are its objectives?
7. Name the books written by Shankaracharya.

III. Activities :

1. Collect all types of vachanas, sing and interpret them.
2. Collect pictures of vachanakaras like Basavanna.
3. Conduct Vachana Singing competition.

IV. Project Work :

1. With the help of your teacher, write an essay on Dwaita and Advaita philosophy.
2. Invite the local vachana singers and have them sing and explain various vachanas.

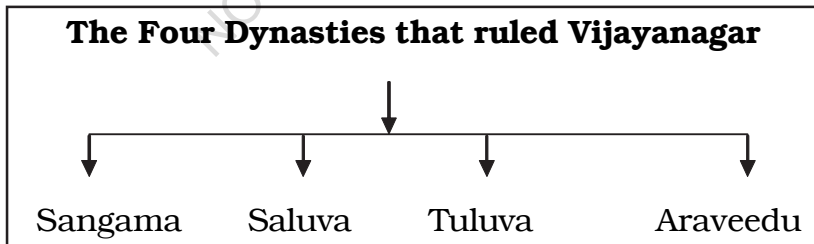
VIJAYANAGARA AND BAHAMANI KINGDOMS

We learn about the following in this chapter,

- the establishment of Vijayanagar and Bahamani kingdoms.
- the dynasties which ruled Vijayanagar and Bahamani kingdoms.
- achievements and contributions of Shri Krishnadevaraya.
- the contributions of the Vijayanagar empire to culture.
- the cultural achievements of the Bahamani kingdom.

The establishment of the Vijayanagar Empire is a landmark in Indian history. The South Indian dynasties – the Yadavas of Devagiri, the Kakatiyas of Warangal, the Pandyas of Madurai, Hoysalas of Dwarasamudra (Halebeedu), the Cholas of Tanjore attacks were all victims of violent of Allauddin Khilji. As a result, political instability, lawlessness, fear and religious turmoil prevailed everywhere. In such a situation, the establishment of Vijayanagar empire enabled the protection of the Hindu religion and Indian culture.

Hukka and Bukka established this empire on the banks of the Tungabhadra river in the year 1336 A.D. Later Hampi became the capital of Vijayanagar empire.



The famous kings of Sangama dynasty (1336 – 1486 A.D.) were Harihara I, Bukkaraya, Harihara II and Praudhadevaraya. Harihara laid the foundation for the Vijayanagar empire and developed a capital amidst of hillocks.

Bukkaraya

Bukkaraya defeated the Reddys of Kondaveedu and merged Penukonda area with Vijayanagar. Bukka was successful in solving the religious war between the Jains and the Srivaishnavas, thereby upheld religious harmony. This fact is revealed by one of the inscriptions in Shravana Belagola. He constructed a fort and a few temples in the capital and encouraged agricultural activities. Bukkaraya sent an ambassador to the court of a Chinese king belonging to the Ming dynasty.

Harihara II :

During the 27 years rule of Harihara II, the son of Bukkaraya, the Vijayanagar Empire comprised of vast areas. He took into his control Kondaveedu, Kurnool and Nellore forts. At the time of the death of Bahamani Sultan Mujahid, Harihara II expanded his kingdom from Goa to the north of the Konkan coast. He occupied the fort of Pangala lying to the north of Krishna river in the year 1398 A.D.

Do you know this ?

The writing of commentaries on the Vedas was completed during his period. Hence Harihara II earned the title 'Vaidika Margasthapanacharya'. He developed markets in 26 important cities of his kingdom.

Devaraya II (Praudhadevaraya) :

The most famous king in the Sangama dynasty was Devaraya II. He had earned the title of 'Elephant Hunter'. Devaraya II defeated the king Gajapati Kapilendra of Orissa and seized Kondaveedu. By suppressing the regional leaders of the border, he expanded the kingdom upto Krishna river in the north east. Later, he defeated the Kerala ruler and received royalties from Kerala and Sri Lanka. This earned him the title "Dakshinapathada Chakravarthi" (the Emperor of the South). Through these conquests the Vijayanagar Empire extended from Sri Lanka to Gulbarga and Telangana to Malabar.

Do you know this ?

Nicole Conti, an Italian traveler, visited Vijayanagar and has recorded interesting facts about the kingdom. He has revealed that the capital spread across 60 sq.miles.

Devaraya II chased the traditional foe Ahmed Shah of Bahamani till Bijapur and occupied Mudgal and Bankapura. His commander, Lakkanna Dandesha, took up a successful naval victory.

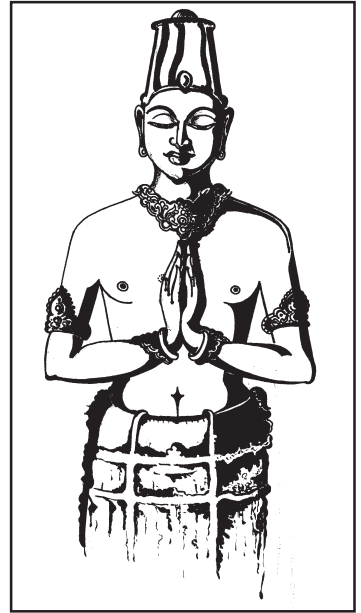
Devaraya II was tolerant towards other religions. He constructed Mosques, Jain and Vaishnava temples in the capital. Being a poet himself, he had in his court the Sanskrit scholar, Dindima and the Kannada scholar, Lakkana Dandesha. During his period, Veerashaiva tradition and literature saw a revival. After the death of Devaraya II in 1446 A.D, weak kings came to power, and the rule of the Sangama dynasty came to an end.

Krishnadevaraya

The son of Narasanayaka of Tuluva dynasty and his second wife, Nagalambika, Krishnadevaraya was the most famous king among the rulers of the Vijayanagar Empire. During his rule, the Vijayanagar Empire reached the pinnacle of glory. Comparabale to world-famous rulers like Ashoka, Samudragupta and Harshavardhana. He ruled over for 20 years, When he came to power, the kingdom was facing by various complicated internal and external problems. The Europeans who had arrived through new sea-routes were establishing colonies. The Moghuls of the north were trying to expand their Empire in the south. The five Shahi kingdoms of the Bahamani dynasty became powerful Sultanates and plunged into wars against Krishnadevaraya. In addition to these, the kings of Ummatthur and Orissa were a constant source of threat.

Do you know this ?

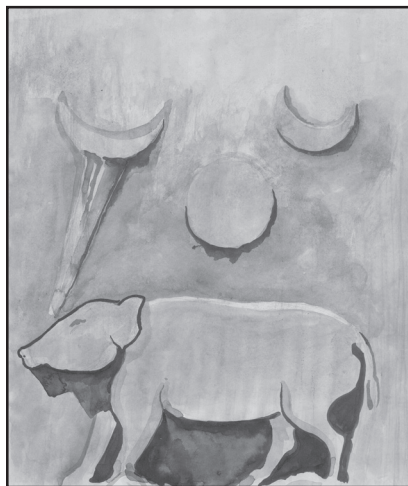
The Persian Ambassador, Abdul Razak, visited the capital of Vijayanagar towards the end of April, 1443A.D. Impressed by the glory of the kingdom, he exclaimed thus: "The eye has not seen nor the ear heard of any place like Vijayanagar. There is no place on earth which is comparable to Vijayanagar."



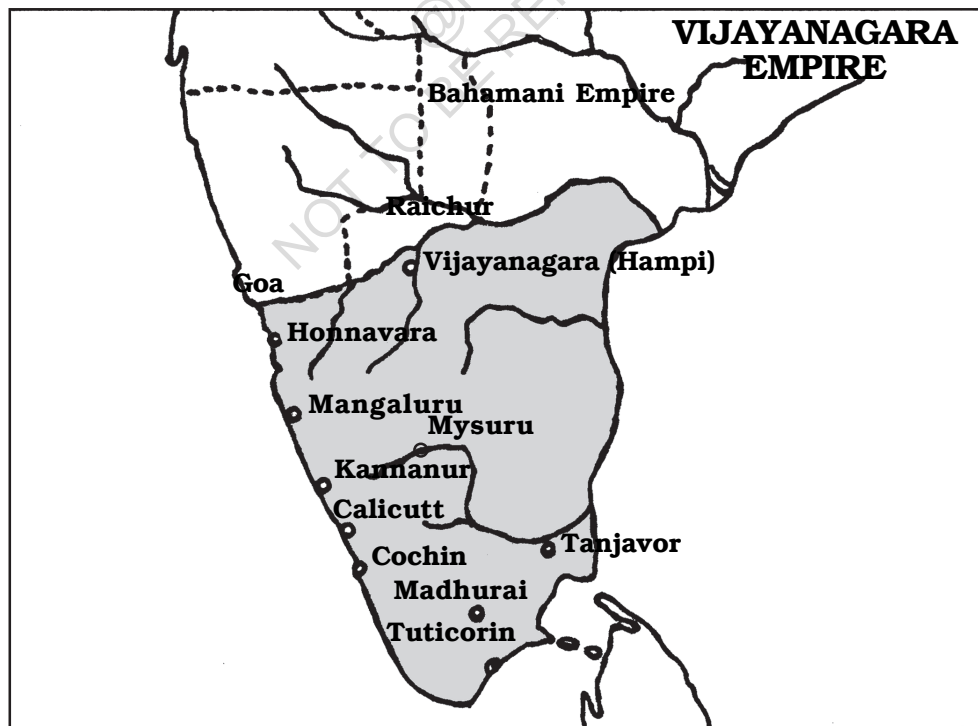
Shri Krishnadevaraya

The military achievements of Krishnadevaraya

As mentioned by Robert Sewell, Krishnadevaraya was an unparalleled warrior, shrewd commander and political expert. He won all the wars and expanded his empire in the South. He defeated Ummatthur's Gangaraja and took over the Shivanasamudra fort from him. Then he conquered the Raichur fort. He helped the Portuguese army to conquer Goa from the Bijapur Sultan and established trade relations with them. He attacked the Udayagiri fort. When he attacked it he thought that it was a very strong fort and very difficult to conquer it, but decided to conquer it in a day and conquered it.] This shows his determination. He conquered Kalinga's capital Cuttack and defeated Gajapati Prataparudra. He signed a peace agreement with him.



State emblem



Krishnadevaraya defeated Adil Shahi of Vijayapura(Bijapur) and won the Raichur fort. At the time of attacking the Raichur fort, he encouraged all the soldiers saying: “Everyone has to die one day. If you die in the battlefield, you go to heaven. If you win, you will be blessed. Therefore, everyone of you come and fight with me; don’t be cowards.”

After occupying Raichur fort, Krishnadevaraya seized Bidar and Kalaburagi(Gulbarga) forts. He defeated the Prime Minister of the Bahamani kingdom, Kasim Bareed and freed the Bahamani prince he had imprisoned and coronated the prince on the Bahamani throne at Bidar and earned the title “Yavanarajya Pratisthapanacharya”. By the time Krishnadevaraya died, the Vijayanagara empire had spread over in all directions and was very vast.

Krishnadevaraya was not only a skilled warrior but also an able administrator. His Telugu work ‘Amukta Maalyada’ reveals the shrewdness he possessed in matters of state. He provided irrigation facilities for expansion of agriculture. With the friendship of the Portuguese, he increased foreign trade. He abolished tax on marriages. He was a great patron of art, literature and religions. There were eight Telugu poets known as Ashtha Diggajas in his court. Krishnadevaraya was a poet himself and wrote the play ‘Jambavati Kalyana’ in Sanskrit. Allasani Peddanna, Nandi Timmanna, Durjuti, Tenali Ramakrishna and others were the Telugu poets in his court.

Krishnadevaraya constructed Krishna temple at Hampi. Along with many of the temples, he erected Maharangamantapa in Virupaksha temple at Hampi and also many other temples. The Portuguese travellers, Paes and Barbosa, have applauded the dignity and ability of Krishnadevaraya, during whose time people of all religions enjoyed religious freedom.

Fall of the Vijayanagara Empire

After Krishnadevaraya, Achyutaraya and Sadashivaraya came to the throne, Krishnadevaraya’s son-in-law, Ramaraya of the Araveedu dynasty handled the administration in an able manner. Although Ramaraya had improved the prestige of the kingdom by waging many wars during his 23-year reign, many foes had sprung up against Vijayanagar.

Activity :

Read stories of Tenali Ramakrishna which reveal his intelligence

Counteracting to the frequent attacks by the Deccan Shahi Sultans, Ramaraya had occupied Vijayapura and Golkonda forts. This had provoked the Sultans to wage war against Ramaraya. The Deccan Sultans who were envious of the progress and prosperity of the Vijayanagara empire, forgot their political differences and united in the name of their religion.

Do you know this?

Penugonda, Chandragiri, Paddebidu, Tiruvadi (Tiruvankuru), Muluvayi (Mulubagilu), Santalige (Shivamogga area) and Mangaluru were the important provinces of the Vijayanagara empire.

In 1565 A.D. the united army of the four kingdoms mounted an attack on Vijayanagar. Ramaraya's army was defeated in this battle, and he died. The victorious army of the Deccan Sultans plundered the glorious kingdom of Vijayanagar. As a result, the capital Hampi became a ruin. Later, the Araveedu dynasty ruled from Penugonda, Chandragiri and finally Vellore till 1646 A.D. The chieftains of Mysuru, Keladi and Chitradurga in Karnataka became independent.

The cultural contributions of Vijayanagar

Administration : The administration in the Vijayanagara empire was carried on in a traditional manner. The kings selected their eldest sons as their heirs. The central administration was strong and some powers were decentralised. The Council of Ministers, strong military, provincial chieftains or the king would give land to the leader or chieftain in return for military service. There were different bodies like the State Council leader (Nayankar), village administration etc. Thimmarasa was a great Prime Minister. The kingdom had various administrative levels like the state, district and village.

Do you know this?

- Honnamma was a reporter in the court of Devaraya II.
- Wrestling was the most popular sport during the Vijayanagara period. Hariyakka was a famous female wrestler of that time.

The king enjoyed absolute power in judicial matters. The provincial officers used to dispense justice in the provinces. Punishment used to be severe. The village was the last level of administration and the Grama Sabhas used to carry on the

Do this yourself :

Visit a Gram Panchayat and collect information about the way Gram Sabhas work.

administration there. The Gowda, Karnam and Talwar used to assist in the village administration. In the Provinces the Nadagowdas and in the cities the Pattanaswami used to look after the administration.

Vijayanagar had a mighty army. It consisted of three hierarchies of permanent troops, troops sent by vassal states and troops of royal guards (this looked after the king's security). Infantry, cavalry, elephants and cannons were the main factions of the army. Cannons began to be used in wars from 1368 A.D. onwards. There were mammoth elephants. Horses brought from Arabia were a major attraction at Vijayanagar. There was a naval squad in the army. People from all religions could occupy high positions in the army. Farmers and hunters became chieftains. Forts and moats played an important role during the wars.

Social system : The society was based on the four tiered caste system. However, there was also occupation-based caste system. There were many skilled artisans, blacksmiths, goldsmiths, bell-metal smiths, carpenters, weavers and cobblers in the society. The practices of child marriage, sati and devadasi systems were prevalent. Though monogamy was the common practice, kings and rich people had many wives. Women enjoyed a dignified status in society. There were female wrestlers and female palace guards. Holi, Deepavali and Dasara festivals were celebrated publicly. Dasara festival used to be celebrated with pomp and glory at Hampi under royal patronage. Music and dance enjoyed great popularity.

Economic system : Vijayanagar was economically prosperous. Land tax was the main source of revenue for the kingdom. Farmers used to give $\frac{1}{4}$ of their income to the government in the form of tax.

Professional tax, revenue tax, road tax, market tax, commercial tax, import and export taxes and tributes from the vassals were the other forms of revenue to the kingdom. Agriculture was the backbone of the economy. People grew different kinds of crops throughout the year. Jowar, ragi, paddy, wheat, lentils, pulses like green gram, black gram and tuvar, sesame (til) seeds, groundnuts, cotton, sugarcane and coconut were the main crops. The Vijayanagar kings constructed wells, tanks and canals to encourage

Do this yourself :

Compare the Dasara celebrations today at Mysore and in those days at Hampi.

irrigation and agriculture. There were five kinds of practices of land holdings like geni, guttige, siddhaya, vara and gadi (tenancy, lease holdings and other kinds).

Do this yourself :

Collect coins or pictures of coins of the ancient periods.

The Vijayanagar empire achieved great progress in the field of industries and commerce. Spices like pepper, cloves and cardamom, salt petre, iron ore, diamonds, granulated sugar, musk, sandal perfume etc. were exported by them. There were important textile industries. Coins of different denominations like gold coins, gadyaana, pagoda, silver coins and copper coins were in use.

Do you know this?

Whether he is a Christian, Jew, Muslim or Hindu, everyone lead life peacefully in Vijayanagara kingdom - foreign traveler, Barbosa.

Do you know this?

Vajrakaroor near Gutti in Anantapur district was the diamond center. Sapphires used to be available in plenty in Calicut. Bhatkal was the center for iron ore. Rose perfume used to be manufactured at Pulicat. The Portuguese traveler, Paes, has recorded that there used to be a fair every day at the Vijayanagar capital, Hampi. The seven main markets were Virupaksha, Krishna, Pansupari, Varadarajamma, Achyuta, Vittala and Malyavanta.

Bhatkal, Honnavara and Mangaluru were the important ports of Vijayanagar, and foreign traders from Arab, China and Portugal had trade relation with the Vijayanagar empire.

Religious system : Vijayanagar empire enjoyed the distinction of having encouraged all religions equally. The atmosphere was such that Shrivaishnavites and Jains could forget their religious differences and live in perfect harmony. The early kings of Vijayanagar patronized Shaivites and Veerashaivites, whereas the later kings encouraged Vaishnavites.

In Vijayanagar, masjids and dargas were built for Muslims. The kings of Vijayanagar developed business with Portuguese and encouraged Christianity by giving permission to construct churches.

Literature : Due to the peace and order, economic progress, literature flourished. Various works were created in Kannada, Sanskrit, Telugu and Tamil languages.

Ratnakaravarni's 'Bharateshavaibhava', Chamarasa's 'Prabhulingaleele', Kumaravyasa's 'Gaduginabharata' are the important Kannada works of the time. Bheemakavi translated Palkurike Somanatha's Telugu work, 'Basavapurana', to Kannada language. The collection of Veerashaiva vachanas called 'Shunyasampadane' was also published. Besides Lakkanna Dandesha's 'Shivatatvachintamani', books in Kannada on human medical science, veterinary science, poetics, astrology and cookery were also published. Saint Purandaradasa, Kanakadasa, Shripadaraya and Vyasaraya enriched dasa sahitya. Among these, Kanakadasa's 'Mohanatarangini', 'Nalacharita', 'Haribhaktisara' and 'Ramadhanyacharita' are important.

Do this yourself :

Visit Hampi and collect full information about the temples and other structures there.

Vidyaranya wrote 'Shankaravijaya' and 'Sarvadarshana samgraha' in Sanskrit. His brother, Sayanacharya, wrote commentaries on the Vedas called 'Vedarthaprakasha', 'Ayurvedasudhanidhi', 'Purusharthasudhanidhi' and other books. Kampannaraya's wife, Gangadevi, wrote a book called 'Maduravijayam'. This book deals with Kampanna's invasion and a description of places of pilgrimage.

The court poet of Devaraya II, Srinatha, had earned the title 'Kavichakravarthi'. There were eight famous poets called the Asthadiggajas in Krishnadevaraya's court. Allasani Peddanna's 'Manucharitam', Timmanna's 'Parijatapaharanam', and Tenali Ramakrishna's 'Ubhataradhyacharitam' are important works of this period.

Krishnadevaraya's court had also Tamil poets, paranjyothiyeer Veeraraghavar, Mandala Purusha, Gyanaprakasha, Harihara and others. Paranjyoti Iyer wrote 'Tiruvalayadal puranam'. In the period of Vijayanagara empire they encouraged Sanskrit, Kannada, Telugu & Tamil languages.

Art and Architecture: The excellent work done by Vijayanagar kings in the fields of art and architecture is memorable. The emperors were known as great patrons of architecture. During this period, temples, palaces, forts, towers, huge halls (mahamantapa), public buildings, tanks, bunds, canals and dams were constructed.

The unique features of Vijayanagar art : The Vijayanagar kings continued the architectural style of Chalukyas, Cholas and Hoysalas. The unique feature of their architecture was the construction of huge auditoriam and marriage halls. Temples had huge towers (rayagopura), leaf-shaped arches and platforms. In this art, more than ornamentation, the qualities of grandeur, awe and elegance were given importance. Rough granite stone (kanashile) was used for construction of these structures.

Important temples: During the period of the Vijayanagar kings, temples were built in Hampi, Shringeri, Tirupati, Lepakshi, Karkala, Moodabidri, Bhatkal, Chidambaram, Kanchi, Kalahasti, Nandi, Srishaila, Kolar and other places. The most important temple constructed in the beginning of the Vijayanagar

dynastic rule was Vidyashankara temple at Shringeri. The structure of this temple is unique in India. The most ancient temple of Vijayanagar is Virupaksha temple at Hampi. Having a vast courtyard/hall, this temple has many pillars with sculptures and decorative ceilings.

The Vijaya Vitthala temple of Hampi is known for its magnificent architectural beauty. The saptaswara musical pillars, huge Kalyana Mantapas and the Stone Chariot have enhanced the beauty of this temple.

The Dasara festival was celebrated on the Mahanavami platform constructed by Krishnadevaraya. The ambassador of Persia Abdul Razak recorded that during this festival, kings from distant places and provincial leaders used to assemble as per the orders of the emperors. Kamal Mahal, Elephant stable, Queen's bath are wonderful

Do you know this?

The temples, buildings and idols constructed by the kings of Vijayanagar have been referred to by the famous art historian, Percy Brown. He has described the architectural style as a great evolution of Dravidian style.



Vijaya Vitthala Temple



Hampi Virupaksha Temple

examples of Indo-Muslim architectural style. Lakshminarasimha, Kadalekalu Ganesha, Sasuvekalu Ganesha and Uddana Veerabhadra's idols are attractive. The fort of Hampi during Vijayanagar empire was very strong with seven circular walls around it. At present, there are only four circular walls around it.

Music and Dance: The Vijayanagar kings patronized fine arts like music, dance, drama and yakshagana. Artists enjoyed great respect in the palace and temples. Saint Purandaradasa and Kanakadasa had enriched Carnatic music their contribution of through kirtanas. Dancers, adorned in exquisite costumes and jewellery, performed dance in the temples and palaces.

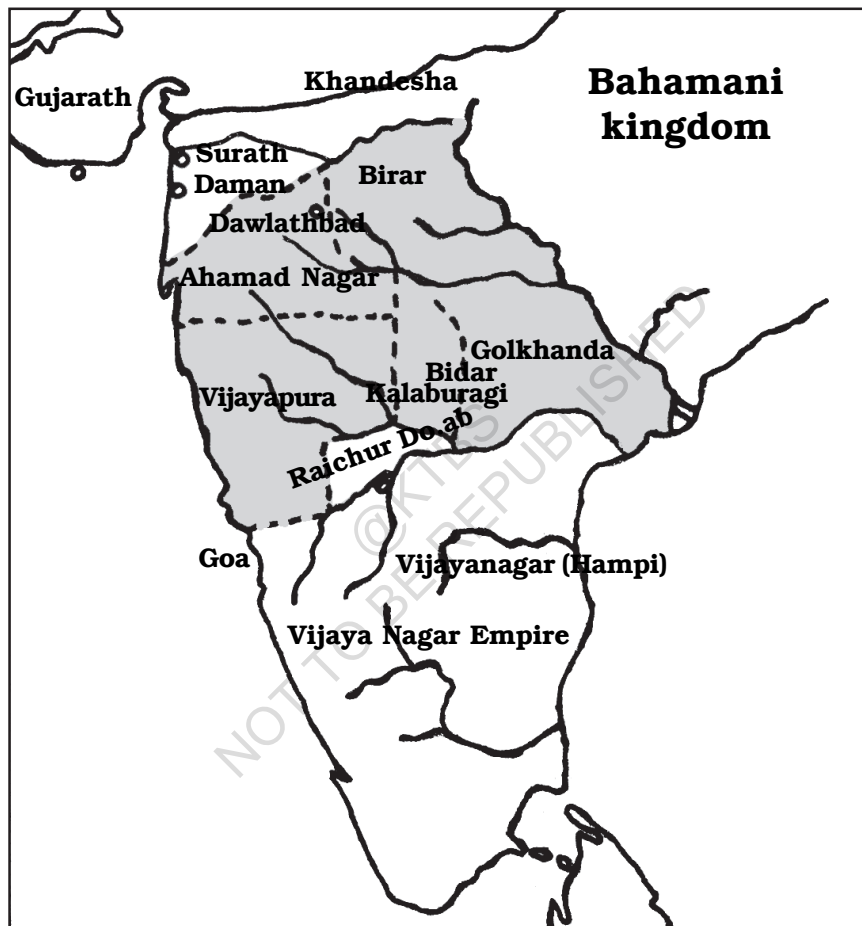


Stone chariot

BAHAMANI KINGDOM

The other important historical change seen in the 14th century was the rise of the Bahamani kingdom. In the year 1347 A.D., Alaud-din Hasan Gangu Baheman Shah established this dynasty. The Bahamani and Shahi dynasties ruled from 1347 to 1686 A.D. Among

their rulers, Mohammad Shah I, Mohammad Shah II, Feroz Shah, Usuf Adil Khan, Ibrahim Adil Shah I, Ibrahim Adil Shah II are very famous. Mohammad Shah, son of Allauddin Hassan Gangu Bahaman constructed the famous vast Jamia Masjid in Gulbarga in the year 1367. Feroz Shah who came after him, built a new capital called Ferozabad. He constructed a planetarium. He was a great scholar.

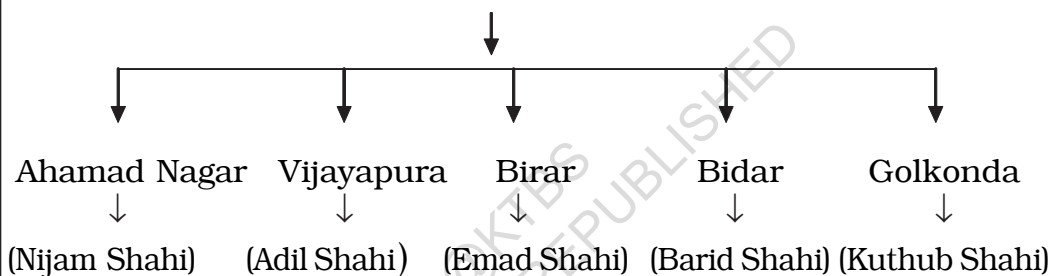


Mohammad Gawan (1411-1481 A.D.)

From 1347 to 1426 A.D., Kalburgi was the capital of Bahamani kingdom. During this period, Mohammad Gawan ruled the kingdom with selflessness and dedication. As a Prime Minister, he took the Bahamani kingdom to great heights. He learnt Muslim religious verses and law at Kairo, also gained proficiency in Arab and Parsi

languages. He served as the Prime Minister during the rule of Bahamani kings Humayun, Nizam Shah and Mohammad Shah III. He was responsible for enhancing the glory of Bahamani kingdom by his efficient administration and victories. Gawan conquered Konkan, Goa and Belagavi. Later, he invaded Orissa and conquered Kondaveedu. In the year 1481 A.D., he invaded Kanchi and plundered its huge wealth. Thus, Mohammad Gawan who was responsible for the all-round development of the Bahamani kingdom, became a victim to a conspiracy of his enemies and was beheaded on the false charge of betrayal to the kingdom. After him, the kingdom became weak and disintegrated into five parts.

Division of Bahamani kingdom (1518 A.D)



Ibrahim Adil Shah II (1580 – 1627 A.D.)

The most famous king of Adil Shahi, Ibrahim II ascended the throne in his 9th year. He ruled over for 47 years with historic incidents. Politically he took Vijayapura to the pinnacle of glory with his efficient administration, and was responsible for the tremendous progress in art, literature and education.

His book 'Kitab-E-Navaras' begins with prayers to the God's Ganesha, Saraswathi and Narasimha. There are prayers to Mohammad Paigambar too. This book is evidence of the knowledge, magnanimity and religious tolerance of Ibrahim II.

Cultural contributions of the Bahamani Sultans

The Bahamani and Shahi Sultans ruled over Karnataka for almost 200 years. In addition to Karnataka, they extended their kingdom upto Tanjore in Tamil Nadu. They had organised their administration based on Islamic religious principles.

Administration: There were three levels of administration namely Central, Provincial and Village. Among these, there was revenue, judicial and military administration too. The Sultan was the chief of the central administration. The cabinet was called Majlis-E-Ilwith. Top officials, commandants, ulemas and amins were friends and relatives of the Sultan.

Do you know this?

Ibrahim Adil Shah II was so impressed by Mahipatidasa's discourse on the Bhagavat that he appointed him Kazhandar official in his court. Mahipatidasa's Bhagavat devotion flowed straight into the heart of the Badshah.

Gawan converted the then existed four provinces into eight units and these provinces were divided into fifteen Sarakars. The Subedar was the administrator in each of these Sarakars. Sarakars were divided into paraganas. Kotwal, Deshmukh and Desai were the administrators of the paraganas.

The final unit of administration was the village having Patel, Kulkarni and guards as staff. The village units were independent units.

Revenue, military and judicial system: Amir-E-Jumlas were the head of the revenue authorities. Land tax was the main source of income for the kingdom. $\frac{1}{3}$ to $\frac{1}{2}$ of the agricultural production was collected as land tax. There were 50 kinds of taxes including house, mines, tobacco, grasslands, trade and employment. The money earned by taxation was used for maintaining palaces, war and bodyguards, construction and maintenance of forts.

The Bahamani kingdom depended on the strength of their military force. Military expenditure was huge. They had four types of armed troops. Permanent troops, troops recruited during war-time, troops for religious wars and units for the protection of the Sultan and the palaces. Infantry, cavalry, elephants and explosives unit were the important divisions of the army. Bijapur fort was the most formidable of the Adil Shahi forts.

Do you know this?

Bibiji Khanum, Yusuf Adil Shah's wife, Dilsha Agha, Chand Bibi and Shahar Banu Begum were the famous women of this dynasty.

The Sultan was the supreme Judicial authority. He ruled according to the prevailing customs, traditions and principles of the Islamic religion. Kazis and senior officers assisted the Sultan in dispensing justice. Due to their efficient administration, the state witnessed progress in economic, social and cultural fields.

Economic, social and religious systems : Agriculture was the main occupation in the villages. Spinning, oil extraction, sugar and jaggery manufacture, thread-weaving, leather work, pottery, carpentry, goldsmithy, perfumery and sculpture were also practised.

There were ports in Dhabol, Rajapura, Chawla and Goa. Silk, wine, gold, silver, copper, tin, lead and glass were the main imports. Trade and employment organisations were in existence. Gold coins known as 'honnu' and silver coins were known as 'lorry' and 'tanka' were in circulation.

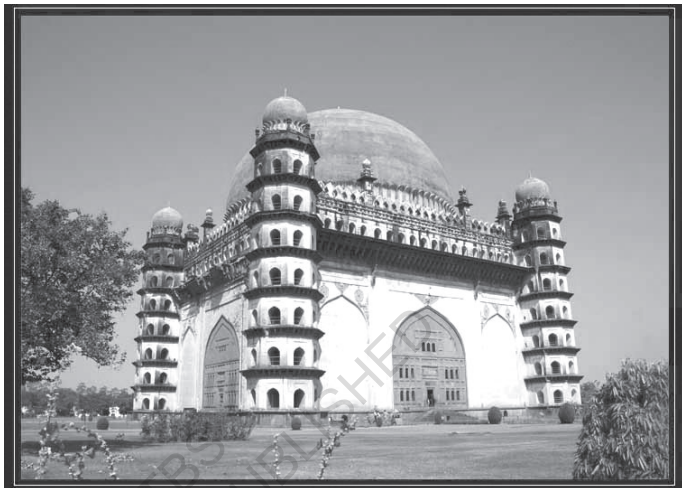
Undivided patriarchal families continued in the society. Caste system and polygamy were practised. Haridasas of the Bhakti panth and Muslim Sufi saints tried to imbibe tolerance in society. In Muslim society, Sunni, Shia, Syed, Sheikh and Pathan were the main groups. Muslim women practised burkha system.

Education, art and architecture : The educational policy of the Adil Shahis was to propogate Islamic culture. There were schools known as maktabas. They were under the control of mosques. The students in the maktabas were taught the alphabet, religion, law, poetry and rhetoric. The madrasas were centers of higher education. Mohammad Gawan who was a scholar himself, established a madrasa (college) at Bidar to encourage study of the Islamic religion and law. This college was 242 ft. length, 222 ft. width and 56 ft height three-storied magnificent building constructed in the Deccan style. It had a library with around 3000 manuscripts. The college was also a lodge for students, teachers and orthodox people. Astronomy, grammar, mathematics, philosophy and political science were studied in this college.

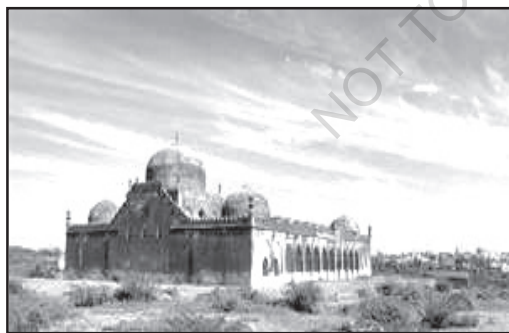
The Sultans developed Indo-Sarcenic style of architecture. The Jamia mosque built by Ali Adil Shah I is a prominent monument even today. Ibrahim Roza, Gol Gumbaz, Gagan Mahal and Asar

Mahals are the important monuments of this time. These monuments have made the Adil Shahis world famous. The Gol Gumbaz at Vijayapura is one of the greatest structures in the world. It has an area of 1800 sq.ft. There are 7- storied minarets in the four corners of the building. There is a huge dome in the center.

Gol Gumbaz : *This monument is in Vijayapura in Karnataka. Mohammad Adil Shah constructed this monument. The construction work is said to have begun around 1626 and completed in 1656. This structure is 51 mtrs.tall and has a wide dome. The dome has four pillars in which steps have been built to go up. The unique feature of this dome is that if one whispers standing on one side of the dome, it can be heard clearly on the other side. It is the biggest Dome in India.*



Gol Gumbaz



Jamia mosque



Bidar fort

EXERCISES

I. Fill in the blanks with suitable words.

1. Vijayanagar empire was established in the year _____.

2. The poetess, who wrote Madhuravijaya is _____.
3. Praudhadevaraya's minister was _____.
4. The king who wrote Amukta Malyada in Telugu was _____.
5. The minister who established famous a madrasa at Bidar was _____.
6. The king who wrote Kitab-E-Navarasa was _____.

II. Answer the following questions after discussing in your group.

1. Name the four dynasties who ruled Vijayanagar empire.
2. What were the achievements of Devaraya II?
3. What were the problems Krishnadevaraya had to face when he ascended the throne?
4. What are the contributions of Vijayanagar empire to the economic system and society?
5. Describe the art and architecture of the Vijayanagar period.
6. How was Mohammad Gawan ? What was his contribution to education?
7. Describe the administration and taxation system during the rule of the Bahamani sultans.
8. Explain the education, art and architecture of the Bahamani sultans.

III. Activities.

1. Collect pictures of the various monuments at Hampi.
2. Read the books which describe the Vijayadashami celebrations on Mahanavami platform at Hampi.
3. Listen to the stories of Tenali Rama from your elders and write them down.

IV. Project Work.

1. Visit Hampi and write an essay on the monuments.
2. Write an essay on the market system at Hampi during the Vijayanagar period.

THE MOGHULS AND THE MARATHAS

We learn about the the following in this chapter,

- the Moghul rulers who ruled over North India
- the contributions of the Moghul sultans to literature, art and architecture
- the rise of the Maratha kingdom and Shivaji's administration

The Moghul dynasty was established in the early part of 16th century. As already mentioned in Chapter 3, when the administration of the Delhi Sultans was weak, Babar established the Moghul dynasty and rule in 1526 A.D.

RULE OF THE MOGHULS IN INDIA (1526 – 1707 A.D.)

Babar

Babar who established the Moghul rule in India, was originally from Turkistan. His father, Umar Sheikh Mirza, was the king of a small kingdom called Pharghana in Afghanistan. Due to the death of his father, Babar had to ascend the throne at the very tender age of 11 years. When he lost his kingdom and was wandering aimlessly, he got the inspiration to attack India, and he invaded India five times. He defeated the Delhi sultan

Do you know this? Babarnama – (Tuzuk – e – Babari)

Babar wrote his autobiography in the Turkish language. In addition to dealing with the political events, he has also described the natural features, beauty, the flora and fauna and gardens of the various areas. Babar was a poet and a talented artist. Abdul Rahim Khan translated Babar's book into Persian.

Ibrahim Lodhi in the battle of Panipat in 1526 A.D. and established the Moghul dynasty in India. This battle is known as the first battle of Panipat. Delhi was his capital. Over a period of four years, he defeated Rana Sangram Singh of Mewad, the Rajput king Mediniraya of Chanderi and Ibrahim Lodhi's brother, Mohammad Lodhi. Babar conquered Panipath, Goghra and Kanwa. He established Moghul rule over a Capital letter area in North India.

Humayun

Humayun, the second Sultan of the Moghul dynasty, was the eldest son of Babar. He had to face many tough problems when he

came to power. Such as problems of unstable and dispersed kingdom, trouble from the Afghans, enmity of Bahadur Shah of Gujarat and the hostility of his own brothers. He conquered Kalinjar fort Daura Jonpur, Chunar fort and Mandasar. Humayun who was defeated by Sher Shah, sought shelter in Sindh province and came back to power after the death of Sher Shah.

Sher Shah

The original name of Sher Shah was Farid, he was the founder of the Sur dynasty. His childhood was not happy. Deprived of parents' love, he wandered about for some years. When he was working under Baharkhan Lohani, the king of South Bihar, he killed a tiger single-handed, and thus earned the name Sher Khan. When Babar took over the administration of India, Sher Shah worked under him and played a significant role.

Sher Shah defeated Humayun and conquered Punjab, Sindh Multan, Gwalior, Malwa, Raisindurga, Marwad and Kalinjar.

Sher Shah's administrative system

Sher Shah's kingdom comprised the whole of North India with the exception of Assam, Gujarat and Kashmir. There were 25,000 infantry, 1,50,000 cavalry and 500 elephants in his army. The cavalry was very strong. The army was divided into various troops and Commandants had been appointed to supervise them. Sher Shah himself paid attention to the organization of the army, arms and ammunition and the discipline of the soldiers. If there was damage to crops during the movement of troops, the government compensated the farmers. Sher Shah constructed new forts at Delhi, Rohtas, Kanauj and Patna.

The land in the kingdom had been classified as excellent, average and bad according to their level of fertility. The farmers gave $\frac{1}{3}$ of their income as land tax to the government.

Do you know this?

To look after the administration, there were four main departments known as Diwan-e-Insa, Diwan-e-Arij, Diwan-e-Raslat and Diwan-e-Vajarat, and two subdivisions called Diwan-e-Khaja and Barid-e-Mamalik.

Do you know this?

The four main highways:

1. From Sonargaon to the banks of river Indus through Agra, Delhi and Lahore. This route was called Sadak-e-Azam
2. From Agra to Burhanpur
3. From Agra to Chittor
4. From Lahore to Multan. On either side of the highway, shade-giving trees were planted and 1700 sarais (shelters for relaxation of travellers) were constructed.

Sher Shah was known for his impartial justice. Hence he had earned the title “Sultan of the fair justice”. The Sultan was the highest judge in the kingdom. He decided all the final appeals. He conducted his court every Wednesday evening.

Sher Shah brought a new silver coin known as ‘daam’ into circulation. This coin weighed 180 liquorice seeds. All the other Moghul kings continued this practice.

Akbar

The most famous Moghul king, Akbar, was born in Amarkot in Sindh. Humayun was his father. When Akbar assumed power, he was only 14 years old. After the death of Humayun, Hemu, the military General of Bengal king Mohammad Shah Abdali, conquered Delhi and Agra. This led to the terrific battle at Panipat in 1556 between Hemu and the Moghuls. This is known as the II Battle of Panipat. Akbar emerged victorious in this battle. His Prime Minister and royal representative, Bairamkhan came to Akbar’s assistance during the war. With the help of mighty army, Akbar conquered



Akbar

Malwa, Jaipur, Gondavan, Chittor, Ranathambhor, Kalinjar, Gujarat and Bengal. The Battle of Haldighat is the most significant battle in the history of medieval India. After the death of the Chittor king, Rana Uday Sing, his son Rana Pratapsingh came to power. Akbar sent his powerful army under the leadership of Generals Mansing and Asaf Khan to fight against Rana Pratap. In the battle at Haldighat, the Moghul army was victorious. The remaining states of Kashmir, Sindh, Orissa, Baluchistan, Khandhar and Ahmednagar came under Akbar. Thus, for the first time, the Moghul kingdom expanded.

Din-e-Ilahi : Akbar was influenced by traditional broad-minded principles in his childhood. As a result, he assimilated the best aspects of all religions in his life. He established a new religious order named Din-e-Ilahi in 1582 A.D. This was based on the motto ‘Peace with all’ (sal-i-kul). This new religion contained the noble aspects of all religions. Abul Fazal was the high priest of this religion. This religion was an amalgamation of thoughtfulness, concern and

worship of natural forces.

Akbar's Hindu policy :

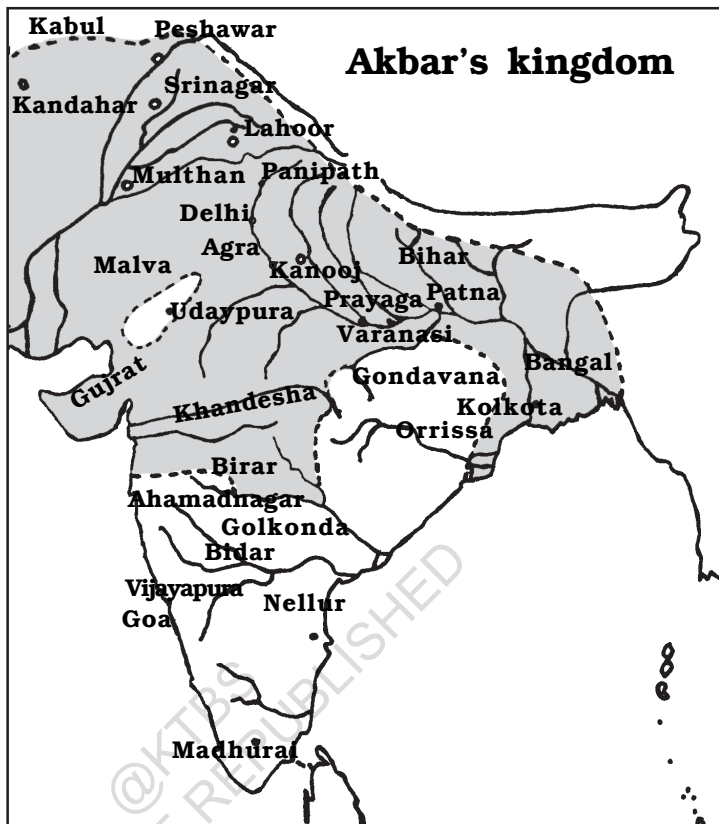
The Sultan adopted a policy of tolerance towards Hindus. He

permitted his Rajput wives to worship their gods in the palace itself. He abolished the jiziya tax on Hindus. He contributed towards the construction and renovation of Hindu temples. He

translated the Hindu religious books into persian language. He showed respect towards qualified

Hindus by appointing them to high positions. Raja Todarmal was a famous minister of finance. Bhagavandas, Mansingh, Todarmal and Raysingh were governors. There were 8 Hindus among the 12 provincial finance ministers. Akbar directed that the festivals of Rakhi, Deepavali and Shivaratri should be celebrated in his court.

Akbar's administrative system : For administrative convenience, Akbar had divided his kingdom into Central government, provincial government and paraganas. Mansabdari system was a unique feature of his administration. Akbar was the Emperor of a vast kingdom, the Commandant of his army, head of the Executive and head of the Judiciary. There were four ministers called Vakil, Diwan, Mirbhakshi and Main Sadar to assist him in the administration. He had divided the kingdom into various provinces. They were called subhas. There were altogether 15 subhas. Each subha had a "Sipaha-Salar" (governor), a diwan, a bhakshi, a sadar, a priest, a constable and a vakiya navis. Every district had a faujdar, an amal gujar and a batikchi.



The administration of the paraganas was carried out by shikdar, amil, potdar and kanungo. Akbar had established many hierarchies in his army. These called mansab and its supervisor was called mansabdar. There were infantry, cavalry, elephant units and cannon units in the Moghul army. There was a separate department to stamp the horses known as daag mahali.

Revenue system : This was one of the important achievements of Akbar's administration. He brought jukti system into practice. Bamboo measuring sticks with iron hooks were used to measure the land. Based on the tilling done on the land, the land had been classified as polaj, parauti, chachar and banjar.

With the exception of banjar (barren) land, based on the fertility of the soil, all the other land was classified as excellent, average and mediocre. Each farmer was given a patta.

The Police system (kotwal) during Akbar's time was well organized and capable. The constables assisted in the districts whereas the revenue officials assisted in the paraganas. Their duty was to preserve tight security on the highways of the district. There were police stations in the paragons. In this manner, for the first time in

the medieval age, Akbar had brought in a very efficient administrative system. Akbar encouraged art and architecture too. The important monuments in Fatehpur Sikri are Kwajaha Bhaga, Daftara Khana, Jodhabai palace, Daulat Khana, Panch Mahal, Birbal House, Kabutar Khana etc.

Do you know this?

The nine gems or navratans in Akbar's court :

Todarmal, Abul Fazl, Faizi, Birbal, Tansen, Abdur Rahim, Khan-e-Khanana, Hamim Humam, Mulla do Payaz and Mansingh.



Panch mahal at Fatehpur Sikri

After Akbar, his elder son Jahangir ruled with good admistation. Shahjahan became the king after the death of his father.

Shahjahan

He constructed the famous, immensely valuable ruby-studded Peacock throne. He appointed his son Aurangzeb as the royal representative of Deccan. In 1636, he defeated the Portuguese and conquered Ahmednagar. He brought into practice measurement and evaluation of land in the Deccan region. Later events led Aurangzeb to become the Sultan. During Shahjahan's time, trade developed between India and the countries of West Asia and Europe. Shahjahan constructed the famous 'Taj Mahal' in Agra in memory of his beloved wife, Mumtaz. The Red Fort at Delhi and the buildings in it are the contributions of Shahjahan. Hence, his period is referred to as the 'Golden Age of Moghul Art and Architecture'.



Taj Mahal

Taj Mahal: The Moghul king, Shahjahan built the Taj Mahal in memory of his wife Mumtaz Mahal on the banks of the river Yamuna at Agra in the state of Uttar Pradesh. The construction of this monument began around 1632 and was completed around 1653. This is built using white marble stone. It is one of the seven wonders of the world, and is included in the list of UNESCO monuments.

Aurangzeb

Aurangzeb received good military training in his childhood and became a capable soldier. He imprisoned his father, Shahjahan, and seized power. In memory of this feat, he earned the title Alamgir, and ascended the throne. Aurangzeb put the principles of Quran into practice. To supervise the implementation of the Quran, he appointed muhtasibs in important cities. He banned practice of sati, music concerts, gambling, drinking and cultivation of ganja in his kingdom.

The Jats, Satnamis, Bundelas and the Sikhs in North India rose in rebellion against the despotic rule of Aurangzeb. The ninth Sikh Guru Tej Bahadur was imprisoned, tortured and killed.

Aurangzeb developed hostilities against the powerful Rajput forces which led to the downfall of the Moghul dynasty. Intolerant of the Maratha kingdom, he waged wars against Shivaji perpetually. After Shivaji died, he imprisoned Sambhaji, tortured and killed him. He fought against the South Indian kingdoms of Adil Shahi of Vijayapura and Nizamshahi of Golconda, defeated them and merged their kingdoms with his own.

The contributions of the Moghuls

Administration : The Moghul administration was hereditary, and absolute monarchy was in practice. The kings referred to themselves as Badshahs. There were ministers as well as officials to advise in matters of administration. Persian was the language of administration. In order to achieve efficiency in administration, the kingdom was divided into provinces, districts and cities. There were administrative officers to supervise them. The Sultan was the head of the judiciary. The Moghul kings had the authority to appoint or dismiss military generals and ministers. The appointment of mansabdars, giving jagirs and framing laws were the duties of the king. Vakil, diwan, mirbakshi and mukhya sadar were the important ministers in the central government. The provincial administration was taken care of by the governor, diwan, bakshi, vakiya navis, kotwal, faujdar, amal gujar and batikchi.

Revenue system: Agriculture was the main occupation of majority of the people in the Moghul kingdom. Land tax was collected according to the fertility of the soil. The agricultural land was measured meticulously and only then the tax was fixed.

Society and the economic system: The king, ministers, officials and other employees enjoyed a dignified status in society. They used expensive cloths, with the exception of Aurangzeb, all the rest used to engage in past-times like music entertainment, drinking of alcohol and gambling. There were many maid-servants to look after the queens in the palaces. People wore jewellery made of pearls, rubies and other metals.

Raja Todarmal had implemented an efficient practice of measuring the land and classifying it. Since North India had many rivers, fertile land was naturally available. Irrigation encouraged development of agriculture.

There were government factories in Lahore, Agra, Fatehpur Sikri and Ahmedabad. The famous textile industries of that period were in Benares, Patna, Dacca, Chabasपुरा, Sonar, Lahore, Fatehpur Sikri and Agra. The weaving of shawls and carpets developed during Akbar's time. Kashmiri shawls became popular. During the Moghul period, India had trade relations with many countries in Asia and Europe. Raw silk, metals, horses, perfumes, gold and silver were imported whereas cotton cloth, pepper, saffron, opium, salt petre and woollen clothes were exported.

Literature: During the Moghul period, many books were written in Persian, Arabic, Turkish, Hindi and Sanskrit languages. Babar and Jehangir were scholars and they wrote their autobiographies Babarnama and Tuzik-e-Jehangir. Abul Fazl who was in Akbar's court, wrote Ain-E-Akbari and Akbarnama in Persian. Badauni translated the Ramayana, Faizi the mathematical work Leelavati and Raja Todarmal the Bhagavat Puran into the Persian language. Great works were written like Ramacharitamanas by Tulsidas, Sursagar by Surdas.

Art and Architecture : The emperors who contributed the most to Moghul art and architecture were Akbar and Shahjahan. The wonderful monuments built by them are in Fatehpur Sikri, Agra and Delhi. These were the capitals of the Moghuls. Shahjahan built Akbari Mahal, Taj Mahal Jehangir Mahal and a fort at Agra. He built forts in Lahore and Allahabad similar to the one at Agra.



Red Fort

After constructing the Red Fort, Diwan-e-Khas, Rang Mahal, Mumtaz Mahal, Moti Masjid, Nakkar Khana, Khas Mahal and other structures were accommodated. In addition to this, the country's largest mosque, Jamia Masjid, was also built at Delhi during Shahjahan's period.

Painting : During the period of Humayun, the art of painting evolved. With the help of Mir Sayyed Ali and Abdus Samad of Persia, various

painted canvases were created. Of the 17 artists in the court of Akbar, 13 artists were Hindus. Famous among them were Daswant, Basavana, Lala and Mukunda. In Jehangir's court, Ustad Mansoor and Abdul Hassan were present. These artists mainly produced huge paintings of Moghul kings and their queens.

THE MARATHAS

The rise of the Maratha kingdom in Deccan during the 17th century was an important development. It spread over the present North India. During the 17th century, Maharashtra was under the control of Nizam Shahi of Ahmednagar and Adil Shahi of Vijayapura. These Sultans employed local Marathas in their armies. Deshpandes and Deshmukhs were the collectors of land tax. Among them, Shahaji Bhonsle was an administrator under Vijayapura Sultan and had been gifted lands.

Shivaji

The establishment of Maratha kingdom opened up a new chapter in Indian history. The Marathas fought with the Moghuls to protect the integrity of the nation and to save it from external aggression. Shivaji was the most famous of the Maratha kings. He was successful not only in expanding the kingdom but also in giving a good administration. The teachings of famous saints of Maharashtra influenced the protection of Hindu religion and establishment of Maratha kingdom.

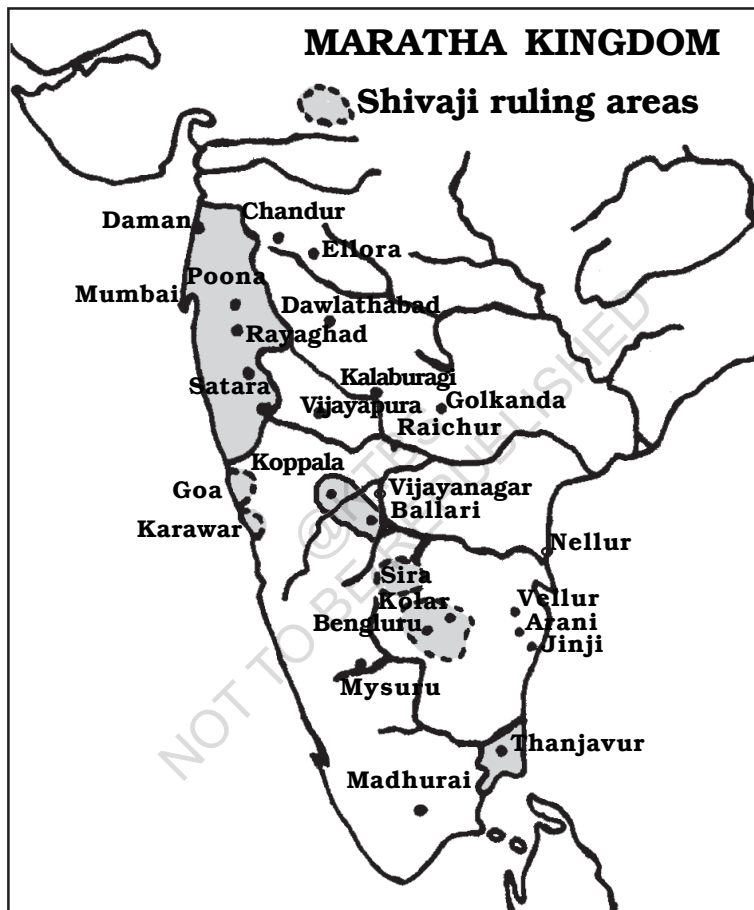


Shivaji

Shivaji was born in Shivaneri of Pune district. His father, Shahaji Bhonsle, was in the service of the Vijayapura Sultan. His mother, Jijabai, was a pious woman who inculcated religious fervor, uprightness, honesty and sincerity in her son. Dadaji Kondadeva was Shivaji's guru and he trained him in armed warfare and the scriptures. Shivaji achieved proficiency in body-building, fencing, horse-riding and other field events.

In his childhood itself, Shivaji had dreamt of establishing an independent kingdom. Therefore, he made Pune as his centre and started the process of expansion of his kingdom. Towards this end, Shivaji assembled an army of the local Mavali youths and trained

them in guerilla warfare. Shivaji conquered Torana fort, Purandhar gadh fort, Chakkankot, Simhagadh and Javali fort from the Vijayapura Sultan. He renamed Hosadurga near Torana fort as Raigadh. He built a new fort called Pratapgad. Since Shivaji fought against Vijayapura Sultans, his father, Shahaji, was captured by the Sultan. On the assurance that he would not attack them again, Shahaji was released.



The relationship between the Moghuls and Shivaji

Shivaji fought the Moghul sultan, Aurangzeb, for many years. In addition to defeating the Shia kingdoms in South India, Aurangzeb had determined to vanquish the Maratha kingdom completely. To achieve this, he appointed Shahista Khan and Jaisingh. Jaisingh defeated Shivaji and made an agreement in Purandargadh. As per the agreement, Shivaji surrendered 23 of his forts and the land

yielding 16 lakhs income annually. He promised to be loyal to the Moghuls and sent 5000 cavalry under the leadership of his son, Sambhaji, to Delhi. With an intention to stop Shivaji becoming intimate with Adil Shah of Bijapur and Kutub Shahi of Golconda, Jaisingh called Shivaji to Agra. Aurangzeb did not show proper respect to Shivaji in his court and insulted him. When Shivaji protested against this, Shivaji and his son Sambhaji were kept in prison in Agra. But after a few days, Shivaji, along with his son, escaped from the prison by hiding in a fruit basket, and reached Raigadh. Later he strengthened his army and conquered many of the forts that he had lost. Shivaji's coronation took place in the year 1674 A.D. at Raigadh. There he was given the title Chatrapathi and felicitated.

Administration : Shivaji had organized an efficient administrative system in his vast kingdom. He had divided his kingdom into many provinces. They were called Swaraj and Moghul areas. Marathi was the language of administration. There were ministers known as Asthapradhans in the central government to assist the king. In addition to them, there were other officials. Province, district and village were the administrative units.

Revenue system: Shivaji's system of revenue collection was Ryotwari system, favorable to farmers. He abolished the jahagir revenue system. The tax was collected in the form of money or material. Chauth ($\frac{1}{4}$ of the land tax) and sardeshamukhi ($\frac{1}{10}$ of the land tax) types of land taxation were in practice.

Judiciary system: In Shivaji's administration, traditional system of justice was in practice. The village panchayat used to dispense justice in villages. The Brahmin judges used to give decisions based on smritis (scriptures).

Army : The Maratha army had infantry, cavalry, elephant units and cannon units. There were important forts in Raigadh, Rajgad, Toranagadh, Pratapgadh and Simhagadh. The hawaldar(constable) was the supervisor of the fort. The army was divided into small units. Shivaji's soldiers were specially trained in guerilla warfare.

Do you know this?

Guerilla warfare:

Hiding in hills, forests and shrubs, and attacking the enemies abruptly is called guerilla warfare.

The successors of Shivaji : When Shivaji was on his death-bed, quarrels arose between his step-mothers, Saibai, Sambhaji's mother, and soyrabai Shirke, Rajaram's mother. Sambhaji by his strength conquered Maratha kingdom and began his reign. He lacked vision and wisdom. Due to this, instead of protecting his kingdom, he himself became the victim of Aurangzeb's army. His wife and young son Shahu were captured. Thus, Sambhaji's step-brother, Rajaram Shahu, became the royal representative and took over the administration. Rajaram fought against the Moghuls again and recaptured Gujarat, Malwa, Khandesh, Berar and other forts. Since Rajaram died in 1700 A.D., his wife, Tarabai Mohite, made her 10-year old son, Shivaji II the king, and ruled over the kingdom on his behalf. She served as the royal representative from 1700 to 1708 A.D. She also waged war against Aurangzeb. Although initially, the Moghuls were victorious, later on the Marathas recaptured their lost territory. Aurangzeb's successor, Bahadur Shah I released Sambhaji's son Shahu from prison and permitted him to collect chauth and sardeshmukhi taxes from Moghul lands in the South. This led to internal strife between Tarabai and Shahu, and Tarabai gave up. But Shahu was not competent enough. He handed over the administration to his Peshwa (Prime Minister). In this manner, the Peshwa rule began in the Maratha kingdom.

THE PESHWAS

Balaji Vishwanath : Balaji Vishwanath was nominated as Peshwa for his efficient and loyal service as a commander of Shah. He played a decisive role in successfully getting Sahu and his mother free from the captivity of the Moghuls. He gained the friendship of Sayyed brothers of the Moghul dynasty and under the employment of Shivaji, earned the responsibility of collecting land taxes on the areas captured by the Moghuls during their administration. He was able to bring together the members of the Maratha Union: Bhonsle, Gaikwad, Holkar, Scindhia and the Peshwas. Thus he established the fame of the Marathas.

Baji rao I : After the death of Balaji Vishwanath, his eldest son, Baji Rao I, got appointed as Peshwa. Although he was only 19 years old, he was an unparalleled warrior. With the intention of expanding the Maratha kingdom in North India, he conquered Gujarat, Malwa and

gained the authority to collect chaauth and sardeshmukhi taxes. He invaded Chitradurga and Srirangapatna of Karnataka. When Baji Rao declared war against the Moghuls, Nizam-ul-Mulk, with the intention of assisting the Moghuls, tried to march towards Delhi. But he lost to the Marathas in a battle near Bhopal. Due to this, the vast stretch of land between the Narmada and Chambal rivers and 50 lakh rupees came to Baji Rao as war compensation. In addition to this, he conquered Salcet and Basin from the Portuguese and Janjira from the Siddhis. Pune became his administrative centre. At this juncture, the members of the Maratha union, Scindhia of Gwalior, Holkar of Indore, Bhonsle of Nagpur and Gaikwad of Baroda decided together to become independent. Baji Rao I not only ruled with efficiency but also re-established the glory of the Maratha empire. Hence he was called Shivaji II.

Balaji Baji Rao: Since he came to power at the age of 20 years, Balaji Baji Rao appointed his close relative, Sadashiv Bavu, to guide him in the administration. He aspired to enhance the image of the Marathas. He took measures to improve the economic state of the kingdom. To establish the empire of Bundelkhand, he travelled with the armies of Holkar and Scindhia in the year 1742 A.D. Ahmed Shah Abdali of Afghanistan attacked Moghul areas and captured Lahore, Multan and Kashmir. Then the Moghul king, Safdarjung, entered into an agreement with the Marathas. This agreement related to internal and external invasions. As expected, Ahmed Shah Abdali invaded India. Balaji Baji Rao fought with his army in Panipat mention the year and got defeated.

Madhav Rao I : He was the second son of Balaji Baji Rao and became the Peshwa after the death of his father. Since he was a minor, he appointed his uncle as the royal representative. After the defeat in the III Battle of Panipat, he recovered in an astonishing manner, and established his kingdom in South and North India. When the Nizam attempted to benefit from the defeat of Panipat, Madhav Rao I defeated him in the battle near Ahmednagar. He defeated Hyder Ali of Mysore also. He not only waged war against Mysore a second time, defeating Shrirangapatna and acquiring all the area earlier occupied by Hyder Ali, but he also received a huge amount of money as war compensation. He overthrew the Rajputs, Jats and Rohils of North India. He helped the Moghul Emperor, Shah Alam II who had

been banished as a traitor, to regain his throne at Delhi. In this manner, Madhav Rao re-established the lost glory of the Marathas in a very short period. After the British routed the Marathas in the Third Anglo-Maratha War, Maratha rule came to an end.

EXERCISES

I. Fill in the blanks with suitable words.

1. The founder of the Moghul dynasty was _____.
2. The most famous emperor among the Moghuls was _____.
3. The king who built the Taj Mahal at Agra was _____.
4. The Moghul emperor who established the new religion Din-e-Ilahi was _____.
5. Shivaji's mother was _____.

II. Answer the following questions by discussing with your group.

1. Describe the military achievements of Babar.
2. Compare and contrast the present-day administrative system with that of Sher Shah.
3. What are the areas won by Akbar ?
4. Describe the contributions of Shahjahan to art and architecture.
5. Describe Shivaji's system of administration.
6. Explain the achievements of Bajirao I.

III. Activities.

1. Mark on a map of India the areas conquered by Akbar.
2. Write an essay on how Shivaji's mother Jijabai was successful in inculcating patriotism in Shivaji.

IV. Project Work.

Write a report on the administrative system in your area.

BHAKTI PANTH**We learn about the following in this chapter,**

- Ramanand, Chaitanya, Guru Nanak.
- the Bhakti Panth in Karnataka.
- the effects of the Bhakti Panth.
- the main features of Bhakti Panth.

The development of the Bhakti Panth is an important feature of the Delhi Sultanate period. The religious reformers and philosophers of this age advocated a life of devotion. Bakti or devotion means trusting God or believing in God. The reformers upheld devotion and surrender to God. They attempted to develop feelings of brotherhood and preached the philosophy of religious harmony. They did not believe in any customs or rituals. They used to worship God who is referred to by different names like Rama, Krishna and Allah. They suggested following the path of Bhakti to achieve moksha or mukti. Pure mind and complete surrender to God was the main philosophy of the reformers. The Bhakti panth became the Sufi panth in Islam.

Ramanand

Ramanand was born in a Brahmin family in Allahabad. He was a follower of Ramanuja's philosophy. He established a Vaishnava religious school based on love and devotion. He travelled to several places in North India and popularized the worship of Rama and Sita. Varanasi was his headquarters. He condemned caste system and allowed people from every caste to join his sect. Kabir was one such follower.

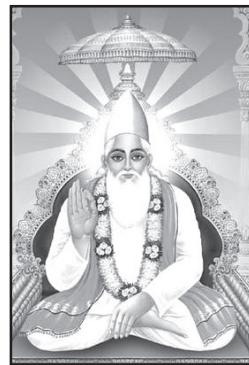
**Ramananda****Do you know this?**

Ramanand gave this unique message to people:

Do not question caste or creed

Think of the Lord and become one with Him.

Kabir : Kabir was another saint who lived in North India during this time. He was a student of Ramanand, and spent most of his time at Varanasi. He began to preach his new philosophy. He condemned caste system and multiple idol worship, and declared that God is one, and he is the same for both Hindus and Muslims. He tried to bring about harmony and tolerance between the two communities.



Kabir

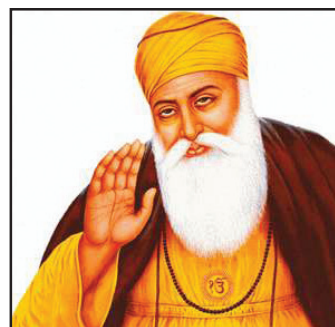
Kabir composed couplets known as dohas. Hindus and Muslims recite these dohas even today in North India. The followers of Kabir are known as Kabirpanthis, meaning travellers who go on the path of Kabir. Kabir was the main religious and social reformer of India.



Chaitanya

Chaitanya : Chaitanya was one of the famous saints of the Bhakti movement. He preached that differences of caste can be removed by discipline, and man becomes pure through devotion. He popularized worship of Krishna. He composed many devotional songs in praise of Krishna. He opposed caste system and attempted to bring about a sense of brotherhood among the people. His philosophical thoughts and teachings are collected in the book called “Chaitanya Charitamruta”.

Guru Nanak : Another advocate of the Bhakti movement was Guru Nanak who had religious leanings right from childhood. He preached that God was one and condemned idol worship. He emphasized good actions and pure, moralistic life. He had both Hindu and Muslim followers. They are called ‘Sikhs’. His teachings are collected in the Sikh Holy book ‘Guru Granth Sahib’.



Gurunanak

Do you know this?

Guru Granth Sahib is called the First Book of the Sikhs. It is kept in the gurudwaras and worshipped.

Meerabai : The other name for the Bhakti movement is Meerabai who was the princess of Mewad. She renounced a life of luxury and became the most devoted follower of Lord Krishna. She composed songs of devotion towards Krishna. These are called 'Bhajans' and they are very popular. Even today, these bhajans are sung throughout India.

Many reformers tried to bridge the gap between Hindus and Muslims in different parts of India.

Vitthoba temple at Pandharapur on the banks of the river Bhima in Maharashtra, was the centre of the Bhakti movement. Gnaneshwar and Namdev, Eknath, Tukaram and Ramdas were the famous saints of the new sect. Purandaradasa and Kanakadasa were foremost among the reformers in Karnataka. Purandaradasa composed 'keertanas' and Kanakadasa composed 'Mohana Tarangini' and some keertanas in Kannada.



Meerabai

Some Sufi Saints

Mohin-Ud-Din chisti, Baba Farid, Nizam-Ud-Din Oulia, Malik Mohammed and Kwajha Bande Nawaz and Others,

Sufi Saints : The Sufi saints arrived from Persia and settled in different parts of India. They are called peer (teacher). Since they wore coarse woolen clothing called suf, these Muslim saints were called 'Sufis'. They preached that it was possible to reach God or Allah through love and devotion. They emphasised the importance of respecting people of all classes. They believed that dance and music filled with devotion take us closer to God. They composed many songs in Urdu and Hindi to proclaim the importance of devotion. The poetic works of 'Mrigavati' of Kutuban and 'Padmavat' of Mallik Mohammed Jaisi uphold Sufi philosophy.

Effects of the Bhakti movement

Reform of the Hindu practices and bringing about harmony between Hindus and Muslims were the two main purposes of the Bhakti movement. The reformers were successful in removing many weaknesses in the Hindu society. The regional languages of India flourished since the reformers wrote in these languages. This enabled development of Indian culture.

Do you know this?

The saints of the Bhakti movement composed keertans and bhajans in the languages they spoke. As a result, all these Indian languages flourished. In Hindi, Surdas composed 'Sursagar' and Tulsidas composed 'Ramacharitamanas'. Abhangs and Gnaneswari were written in Marathi by Gnanadeva.

EXERCISES

I. Fill in the blanks with suitable words :

1. Bhakti means _____ to God.
2. The famous follower of Ramanand was _____.
3. Kabir's followers are called _____.
4. The collection of Chaitanya's philosophical thoughts is called _____.

II. Answer the following questions by discussing with your group.

1. Who popularized worship of Rama and Sita? What are his services to society?
2. Who are Sikhs? Which is their holy book?
3. What are the effects of the Bhakti movement?

III. Activities.

1. Read the life histories of the Bhakti panth reformers.
2. Learn more about the reformers from your teachers.

IV. Projects :

1. Prepare a detailed project about one of the reformers of the Bhakti panth. His life, work and achievements.
2. In groups, prepare a project about one of the reformers.
3. Learn about the values contained in the keertanas of Purandaradasa and Kanakadasa.
4. Learn and sing Kanakadasa and Purandaradasa's keertanas.

CHAPTER – 8

MODERN EUROPE

We learn about the following in this chapter,

- causes and effects of Renaissance.
- geographical explorations and their effects.
- reasons for religious reformation and effects.
- Industrial Revolution and its effects.

In the world History, During the 15th and 16th centuries, Europe entered a new age. The end of the Middle Ages and the beginning of the Modern Age have turned out to be two important events in the history of Europe. Capture of Constantinople by the Turks and increased trade activities became the reasons for the Renaissance, geographical explorations, religious reformation movement and industrial revolution.

The Renaissance

The meaning of the word Renaissance is rebirth or reawakening. This word sums up all the physical changes towards the end of the middle ages in Europe. The 14th and 15th centuries indicate the development of Western European art, architecture, religion, philosophy, science and political matters. The intellectual renaissance movement started first in Italy. Later on, it spread to other areas. Therefore, Italy can be called the birthplace of Renaissance.

Reasons for Renaissance

The fall of Constantinople in the year 1453 A.D., end of slavery, development of Guttenberg printing machine in Germany and geographical explorations were the important reasons for Renaissance. The patronage given to scholars, artists, scientists and philosophers by the princes of Europe, aristocrats, merchants and clergy also contributed to the Renaissance.

Features of Renaissance

1. The thinking of the people during the Renaissance movement was quite different from that of the people in the Middle Ages. People's opinions towards the world and man changed. This was called 'humanism'. The humanists developed keen interest in great literature. Attempts were made to support actions related to human life.

2. The works written in English, Italian and German languages by the writers of Renaissance period became very popular.
3. There were changes in the economic and social life. Agriculture gave place to commercial and industrial activities. Fundamental changes took place in social relations also.
4. The main feature of Renaissance was the interest shown by people in great culture and their desire to cultivate it. This is called "Imitation of the best".
5. The migration of Greek and Roman Scholars to Italy, was the first signs of Renaissance in Italy.

Literature of Renaissance

Italy was the motherland of great writers. France, England, Germany and Spain too contributed a lot to literature. The theme of literature of this period was worldly matters rather than religion. Many articles were written about the human body, voice and other subjects. Instead of Latin, many of the regional European languages came to be used in daily life.

Petrarch : (1304-1374 A.D.)



Petrarch

Petrarch is known as the 'Father of Renaissance'. He collected about 200 Latin and Greek manuscripts. 'Africa' is his famous poem. He was well-known for his poems and sonnets. A deep contemplation of man's happiness and sorrow can be seen in his poems.

A collection of 100 stories called 'Decameron' written in Italian by Bocaccio, the famous work 'Divine Comedy' by Dante, 'Canterbury Tales' by Chaucer of England, Don Quixote by Cervantes of Spain, Utopia written by Thomas More of England are all notable works. William Shakespeare was an excellent poet and dramatist. He wrote numerous tragedies and comedies. St. Paul School, established in London, was dedicated to the acquisition of this new knowledge.

Renaissance Art (architecture and sculpture)

During this period, the art was simple and natural. Artists drew murals showing mythological characters, Jesus Christ and his followers with natural human emotions.

There were many artists in Italy during the 16th century. Michael Angelo, Raphael, Leonardo da Vinci and Titian were important artists. Michael Angelo's 'Adam and Final Decision', Leonardo da Vinci's 'Last Supper' and 'Monalisa', Raphael's 'Sistine Madonna' and Titian's 'Assumption of the Virgin' were the famous paintings.

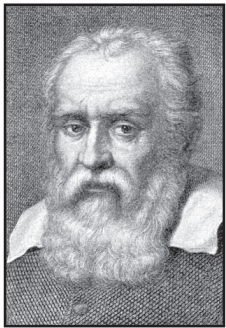


Renaissance Painting

Science during Renaissance (birth of Modern science)

Modern science was born during the Renaissance period. Science set aside religious dogma and came out with new discoveries. Learning about humans became a precursor to new inventions. People during the Middle Ages accepted everything without any questions. As necessity and questioning attitude developed, scientific research also increased. Francis Bacon declared that ancient scientific decisions did not represent any professional knowledge. Descartes encouraged skepticism and advocated questioning of everything before accepting it. Poland's Copernicus disproved the earth-centric argument of Ptolemy of Greece and showed that the sun was the centre of the solar system.

Kepler

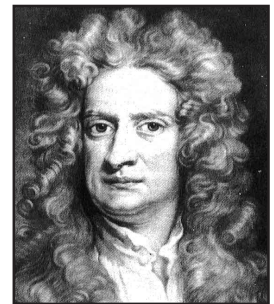


Kepler was a German scientist and explained that planets revolve around the sun on an oval orbit.



Kepler

Galileo : Galileo discovered the telescope. When he supported the theory of Copernicus, he was summoned to Rome and admonished by it.



Newton

Galileo **Newton :** Newton discovered the laws of Gravitation and said that all heavenly bodies are controlled by this gravitational force. Keen

interest was shown in the study of chemistry, medical science and anatomy. Andrew Vesolius conducted a human surgery and wrote a scientific book on the possibility of effective treatment on the skeletal system, muscular system, brain, liver and reproductive organs.

Effects of Renaissance

During the Renaissance period, a humanitarian approach to life gained popularity. Scientific knowledge grew about the world. Knowledge of movement of astronomical bodies expanded and geographical exploration was possible by using sea routes. As a result of scientific discoveries and technological advances, industrial revolution became a reality. Dogmas were condemned. Progressive thinking gained momentum. This led to changes in the Catholic church and paved way for religious reformation movement.

Geographical explorations

The 16th century has been called a century of geographical explorations. Till the end of the Middle Ages, Europeans were ignorant of geography. In the later developments, Europeans found new sea routes to various parts of the world. The new continents of North America, South America and Australia came to light.

Reasons for geographical explorations

1. When the Turks conquered the city of Constantinople in 1453 A.D., it opened the trade gates between east and west because greater share of the profits from importing spices from India went to the Turks. Due to this, the Europeans faced the inevitability of finding a new sea route to India.
2. Spain and Portugal were ambitious of competing with Arabs in sea trade.
3. Discovery of new countries opened the possibility of spreading Christianity.
4. European curiosity was roused by the adventurous nature of sea voyage towards eastern countries.
5. Mariner's compass and astrolabe equipment were helpful to sailors. Charts and maps were available to sailors.
6. Europeans believed that China was a fertile place to make profit.



Mariner's compass

Instrument used to show distance and route to navigators

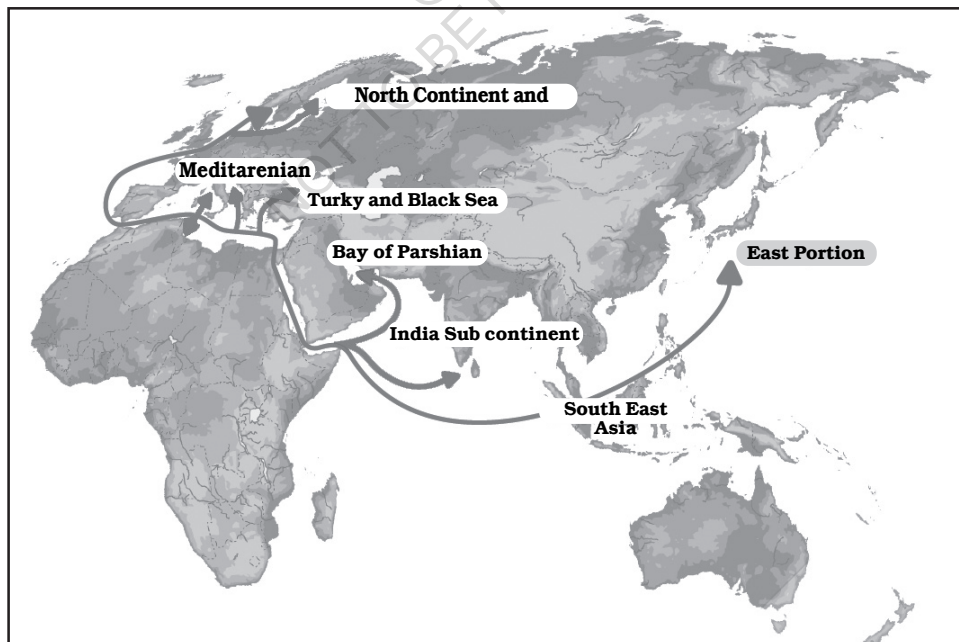


Astrolabe

Instrument used to show time and distance of sun, planet and stars from earth

Geographical explorations

The countries which engaged in geographical explorations after the Middle Ages were Portugal and Spain. The sailors sent by Henry moved around for a long period, explored the west coast of the African continent and went a long distance towards the south. Bartholomew Dias reached the southern tip of African continent and called it Cape of Good Hope. In 1498 A.D. Vasco-da-Gama of Portugal sailed around the Cape of Good Hope, crossed the Indian Ocean and reached Calicut in India. Thus, the dream of reaching India by Europeans came to be a reality.



Map of the world (New Sea route)

Christopher Columbus of Genoa city, crossed the Atlantic ocean with the help of the king of Spain, reached the Bahamas in West Indies (Caribbean islands).

While Portugal's Kabral reached Brazil in 1500 AD, Balboa climbed a hill near Panama Strait and saw the vast ocean to the west. That was the Pacific ocean. Another Portuguese sailor Ferdinand Magellan, was the first to go round the Cape. After travelling for 5 months, he reached South America in the year 1520. From there, he reached the Philippines through the Indian ocean. One ship passed between the Indonesian islands, went round the earth and reached Spain via Cape of Good Hope.

Do you know this?

Amerigo Vesputi discovered the mouth of Amazon river and called it the New Continent. This came to be known as America.

Effects of land exploration

1. Competition began between the countries of Europe to build colonies in the newly explored lands. The contest was severe for gaining strength in trade in America, Africa and Asia. This helped them gain monopoly in trading in the countries they conquered.
2. Raw materials from the new colonies enriched the European countries.
3. Capitalism gained strength in European countries and led to the beginning of the Industrial revolution.
4. Christian missionaries travelled far and wide and propagated Christianity.
5. Colonialism and imperialism led to hatred between the local and the foreigners.

Religious Reformation

The biggest religious movement of the 16th century in Europe was the revolt against the monopoly of the Roman Catholic church which led to religious reformation. The church was probably the most powerful institution in the Middle ages.

The religious reformation heralded the beginning of a new age. The movement started by Martin Luther is known as Religious reformation. This movement led to the Protestant sect in the Christian religion. There were many reasons for this movement:

1. Many members of the Christian clergy and the Popes instead of leading a chaste life, indulged in materialistic pleasures. Many of them committed immoral acts. The Popes, instead of reforming the religion, showed interest in politics. Italy's Bocacchio, Holland's Erasmus and England's John Wycliffe condemned these acts.

2. Not all the members of the clergy were scholars. They were unable to win over those who questioned the faith and methods of the church.
3. Clashes during the Middle Ages between the Emperor and the Pope, wounded the pride and self respect of the Emperor.
4. Nationalism grew in strength. They did not like the intervention of Roman Catholic church or the Pope.
5. Scientific approach and curiosity inspired by Renaissance made Europeans to contemplate application of these approaches to religious problems also.
6. The church opposed the translation of the Bible which was originally in Greek to other languages.

Martin Luther: (1483 – 1546 A.D.)

The religious movement started by Martin Luther came to be known as “Religious Reformation”. Martin Luther rejected the preachings of the Catholic church. In the year 1517, he expressed opposition against the Church for selling of the confession letters. The Catholic church was of the view that God has bestowed the Pope with the authority of reducing the punishment of the sinners; this authority has been given to the Pope in return for the good deeds done by Jesus Christ and the missionaries. Normally, to be pardoned, a sinner had to do noble deeds. But on many occasions, instead of doing anything good, the sinners found the easy way of paying money to the church and getting the pardon. Martin Luther vehemently opposed the sale of such letters of pardon. The followers of Martin Luther were called ‘Protestants’. Around half of Germany’s population became Protestants.



Martin Luther

Religious reformation took a new turn in Europe. The religious atmosphere became vitiated. All over Europe, people gave up their lives for their religious beliefs, or they were put in prison or divested of their property. Wherever they were more influential, Roman Catholics harassed the Protestants. In retaliation, the Protestants harassed the Catholics in places where they had government support. The long war of thirty years was a result of the hatred between the Catholics and the Protestants.

Effects of the Religious Reformation

1. As a result of the religious reformation, the solidarity of Christian religion received a severe blow. Christianity was divided into three sects: Catholic church, Orthodox church and Protestant church.
2. Many of the European kings got liberated from the hold of the Church and the Pope.
3. Religious reformation led to rise of nationalism.
4. The confiscated wealth of the Church was utilized for the economic development.
5. Patriotic feelings became strong and the kings of Europe developed religious tolerance.
6. Due to this movement, the literary field saw progress. Local languages influenced the European minds.
7. The Catholic church itself underwent reformation and this came to be known as Counter Reformation.

Counter Reformation Movement

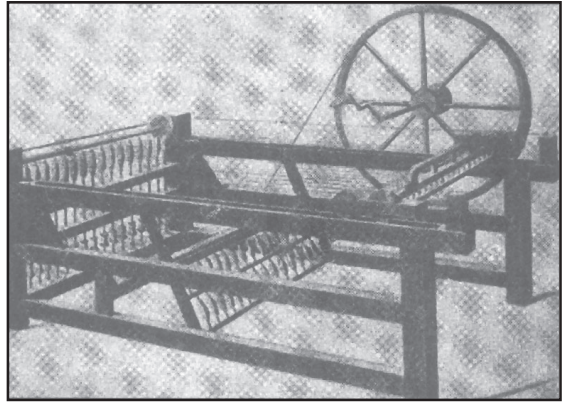
The Protestant group gained strength by spreading very rapidly. Alarmed by this development, the Catholics saw the necessity of self-reformation to protect their image. The arguments of Protestants were effective in attracting the attention of the people. This incident dealt a severe blow to the existence and survival of the Roman church. They had to do something to protect the interests of churches. Such a necessity gave birth to a movement called Counter-reformation. Stopping the advance of Protestants and repairing the damage to Roman churches were the objectives of this movement. Hence, an attempt was made to find a suitable solution to all the problems by making internal changes in the church.

The leader of this counter reformation was the Spanish aristocrat called Ignatius Loyola. He founded the Jesus society in the year 1540. Their main aim was to restore the glory and authority of Roman Catholic church. The main objective was to impart good education to the followers of this organization and make them to dedicate their lives for the service of society.

“Inquisition”, a religious practice of interrogating those who violated the dictates of the church and punishing them, came into existence from 1542 onwards. It also stopped the Catholics from getting converted into Protestants.

INDUSTRIAL REVOLUTION

With the establishment of colonies, trade increased and demand for finished goods rose. The traditional processes of production could not meet the demand. It was at this time that there was intellectual awakening and the expectation of profit took root. Due to this, the people engaged in industries were encouraged to find better processes of production. In the early part of



Spinning Jenny Machine

the 18th century, new methods in the fields of industry and transport brought about change. The changes that took place in the industrial field between 1760 to 1830 are called the Industrial Revolution.

The Industrial Revolution first began in England. Later it spread to other countries of the world. Normally 'revolution' means the fast-paced, violent, intense change in the political field. But the industrial revolution in England did not witness any swift or violent changes. The changes were slow, gradual and continuous. They were also wide-spread and profound.

Although England was primarily an agricultural country before 1760 A.D., woollen textile and cotton textile industries had developed well. As trade increased, the demand for finished goods too increased. But the production could not match the demand. The skilled artisans would not invest more on the raw materials and speed up the manufacture. Therefore, some rich people employed these skilled artisans for wages, provided them raw materials and made them work in big buildings called factories. This laid the foundation for establishment of factories. Although the factory owners reaped huge profits by selling the products manufactured in these factories, the skilled artisans and other laborers continued to be poor.

During the period from 1760 to 1830 A.D., great changes took place in the textile manufacturing industry in England. James Hargreaves invented a weaving machine called spinning jenny in

1764. After a few years, Richard Arkwright improved this spinning jenny, and in 1769, invented the waterframe.

In 1779, Samuel Campton invented a machine known as 'mule'. John Kay invented the horse shoe which moved from one side to another. Edmond Cartwright invented the weaving machine called 'powerloom' in 1785. Due to this, more cloth could be produced in a very short time.

In 1793, Elli Whitney invented the cottongin. All these inventions enabled spinning, weaving, ginning and producing textiles very fast.

The invention of the steam engine was another milestone in the industrial revolution. In 1705 A.D., Thomas Malcomus invented a kind of steam engine. James Watt improved this steam engine in 1774 A.D. In 1801 A.D., Richard Trevethique attached the Watt steam engine to a rail coach and made it move on the road. Later he invented an automatic steam engine which moved on rail tracks. In 1815 AD George Stevenson invented a rail coach that could be used to transport goods. A train to carry passengers between the British towns, Swakton and Darlington, and another train to transport goods from Liverpool and Manchester was constructed.

In 1801, an American, William Simington, adapted Watt's engine to a boat and made it move. Another American, Robert Fullton, invented a steam ship.

Effects of the industrial revolution

Due to the innumerable changes in industries, demand for machines grew. Many changes took place in the economic and social fields too. New factories were established. The cost of production came down and essential products were available at a low price. Cottage industries could not compete with the giant factories and, thus, they collapsed. The rich became richer and the poor remained poor. People had to migrate from villages to towns. A capitalist class emerged in society. Hostilities developed between the owners and the workers, and class conflict began.

Discuss :

Industrial revolution is suppliment to Today's Economic development. Discuss.

EXERCISES

I. Fill in the blanks with suitable words.

1. Renaissance means _____.
2. _____ is called the father of Renaissance.
3. Followers of Martin Luther are _____.
4. The leader of the _____ Reformation movement is _____.
5. Founder of the spinning jenny machine is _____.

II. Answer the following questions by discussing with your group.

1. What were the consequences of religious reformation?
2. What were the reasons for geographical explorations?
3. Which are the water-colour paintings of Leonardo da Vinci?
4. Explain the development of literature in the period of Renaissance with an Example.
5. Describe the effects of Industrial Revolution.

III. Activities.

1. Learn about the scientists of Renaissance period.
2. Collect the picture of machines developed during Industrial revolution.

IV. Project Work.

1. Collect pictures of artists of the Renaissance period and their works.
2. List the names of scientists and their discoveries.
3. Discuss with your art teachers and collect the life histories of present-day artists.
4. Make a list of discoveries of the Indian scientists who lived before the time of European scientists.

REVOLUTION AND RISE OF NATION STATES

We learn the following in this chapter :

- rise of nation states and their development
- the causes and effects of the American War of independence
- the causes for the French Revolution
- the Unification of Italy and Germany

The emergence of modern age is a Sign of the downfall of National Monarchy, In 15th, 16th and 17th Century. There was no logical support for the establishment of these states. They varied from large empires to small city-states. The people living in these states were not of the same kind. They were of different nationalities. They spoke different languages and followed different cultures.

After the decline of the feudal system, the political strength of the landlords also came down. As a result, many European kings reduced their dependence on these landlords and took all the power to their hands. Many kings believed in Divine Right Theory and were of the opinion that they were not answerable to citizens.

In order to secure their own welfare, the middle class supported the kings and played a major role in the birth and growth of nationalism. A strong nationalistic view or patriotism had its own good and bad effects. These nations were responsible for ending the anarchy of the feudal period. They inspired people of similar culture to come together under the rule of one king.

Conflict and competition started between nations. It paved the way for trade, control of colonies and wars in the American and Asian continents.

North America's 13 British Colonies:

1. *New Hampshire*
2. *New York*
3. *Pennsylvania*
4. *Massachusetts*
5. *Rhodes Island*
6. *Connecticut*
7. *New Jersey*
8. *Delaware*
9. *Maryland*
10. *Virginia*
11. *North Carolina*
12. *South Carolina*
13. *Georgia*

American War of Independence

After the discovery of America, many European countries started establishing colonies there. The four major countries colonizing North America were France, Spain, Holland and England. Along the Atlantic coast of North America, 13 colonies were established by England. These were called the New English colonies. France and England competed with each other to establish the colonies in North America. The intense desire of the American colonies for independence led them to rise in rebellion against England.

Reasons : The rise of nationalism among the people of the colonies, the desire for independence among the colonies, the effects of the 7 years' war, the naval regulations, influence of writers like Thomas Paine, John Adams, Samuel Adams, John Edward Coke and Benjamin Franklin, the Quebec regulation, the

Townsend taxes and the Boston tea party – all these led to the revolution in America.

Do you know this?

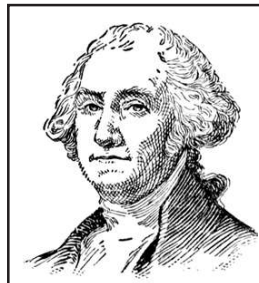
The Seven years' war (1756 – 63 A.D.) : This war was fought between France and England. The Naval Act was passed in 1760. The British colonies acquired monopoly of sea trade. The Molasses Act which came into existence in 1764 helped the American liquor manufacturers to transport molasses. The Quebec Act of 1774 led to dissatisfaction among the colonies. The Stamp Act was brought in to force in 1765 A.D. As a result, it was possible to impose taxes on tea, paper, glass etc. in 1767 A.D.

The Boston Tea Party (1773 A.D.) : In spite of protests, Britain sent a ship full of tea to Boston harbor. This enraged the colonies. A group of 50 people dressed like Red Indians entered the ship and threw about 340 cartons of tea into the sea.

Declaration of Independence : To discuss the prevailing situation, representatives of the 13 British colonies of North America met in

Philadelphia in 1774 A.D. They threatened to oppose with armed rebellion any move to cut short their independence. The king of Britain declared this act as a revolt and sent military troops to suppress the same. The colonies had no option but to fight the British with the local arms. In this manner, on 19th April 1775 at Lexington, when a troop of the colonies attacked the British, the American war of independence began. The Philadelphia Conference appointed George Washington as its commander.

George Washington : George Washington was a gardener in Virginia. He played a major role as a military officer in the 7 year war against France and gained popularity. He encouraged the illiterate and unorganized colonized army with courage and enthusiasm. He made them fight against the British army bravely. On the 4th of July 1776, the Philadelphia National Conference adopted the famous Declaration of Independence. This declaration mentioned that all the 13 British colonies have cut off their political relations with the motherland and have become free.



George Washington

War : The war between England and the colonies lasted for 5 years. Initially the colonies had to suffer setbacks. George Washington had to face a lot of problems. But in the battle of 'Saratoga', the British army lost. With the help of the French army, George Washington defeated the British army in battle of Yorktown. British commander, Lord Cornwallis surrendered with his army. In the year 1783 A.D., as per the Paris agreement, Britain accepted that the 13 colonies were independent. Since the declaration of independence was made on 4th of July, it became a day of great significance to the Americans. Even now, July 4th is celebrated as Independence Day in America.

In the year 1787 A.D., the representatives of all the 13 independent colonies met at Philadelphia and chose George Washington as the President of the United States of America. They created a constitution, which is the first written constitution in the world.

Consequences of the American War of Independence : The war acted as an inspiration for the French Revolution. Many of the French who fought assisting the colonial army became leaders of the French

revolution. Many of the Spanish and Portuguese colonies in America got inspired to become free and hence, revolted against their motherland. The new nation called the United States of America was born.

THE FRENCH REVOLUTION

Putting an end to the dictatorial rule of their kings and establishing a socio-political system based on equality and democracy was the main purpose of French revolution. This tremendously affected the political revolts in various other nations of the world. The following were the reasons for the French revolution:

Know this

In the opinion of the Historian, the European History merged in, one nation, one event and in a man.

The nation is French, event is French revolution, a man is Napoleon.

Social reasons : In the French society, inequality prevailed in all spheres. It was unbearable and inhuman. The pain of this inequality turned into a burning rage in the hearts of the citizens and led to the French revolution. Before the revolution, there were three classes in the French society. The first class consisted of the clergy, the second was that of aristocrats and the third consisted of the ordinary citizens.

The first two classes enjoyed all the facilities and were few in number. Exempted from paying any taxes, they led a luxurious life.

The third class was deprived of all facilities. Intellectuals, agriculturists, labours and professionals were there in this class. Their income was less but taxes were more. Their life was in a bad state. These people did not command respect in society. They had no political rights and had to tolerate insults. They did not have either religious or political rights or freedom. These were the people who were the unhappiest of all in France. They were waiting for an opportunity to overthrow the old system.

Economic reasons : France was an agriculture-dominated nation. In spite of advances in agricultural practices, production lagged behind. The yield from land was very low. The farmers were the most affected. Famines were frequent. As a result, there used to be revolts and riots for food. Industries were under the control of trade unions. Due to internal strife and interference from authorities, the development of these unions was sluggish. Hence, productivity was low.

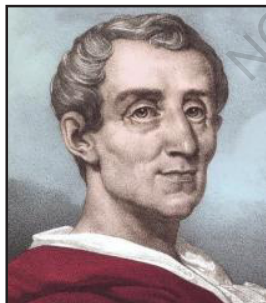
Political reasons: France was ruled by the Bourbon dynasty. Louis XVI became the king. He was an inexperienced king. He lived in the grand palace at Versailles with members of the royal family and courtiers. He led a life of luxury and wasteful expenditure. He was not bothered about the routine administrative work. He had a queen named Mary Antoniette who was the princess of Austria. She was squandering money for her personal indulgences and festivals. She had no concern for the problems of the people. She was interfering in the administration of the nation. People hated her since she was a foreigner and had no love for the French people. The king could not control her. Eventually the situation went beyond control and led to revolution.

Influence of the French thinkers : Famous philosophers and intellectuals Montesque, Rousseau and Voltaire encouraged the rebels by their revolutionary writings.

Montesque : Montesque, in his book 'Spirit of Laws' condemned the Divine Right of kings and declared support for a constitutional government.

Rousseau : Rousseau in his work 'Social Contract' observed, "Man is independent at birth, but is found chained everywhere."

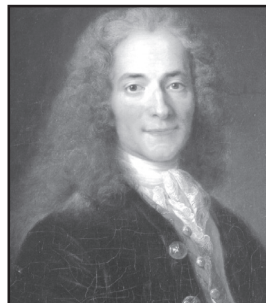
Voltaire: Voltaire condemned the traditions of French society, monotheism and blind beliefs. He also questioned the Roman Catholic church.



Montesque



Rousseau



Voltaire

Effects of American War of Independence : The American war of independence influenced the French tremendously. Many of the French who fought against the British in America returned to their motherland. They encouraged the rebels by giving them all support

and played a pivotal role in the revolution.

Due to all these events, the French king had to call a session of 'States Generals', a legislators' assembly that had not been called in the previous 175 years. The members of the third class declared themselves as the National Assembly. They invited the members of the other two classes to join them.

On the 14th of July 1789, they attacked the state prison at Bastille and released all the prisoners, thereby putting an end to the dictatorial rule. Gradually the revolution spread to other parts of the country. The king had only a nominal presence. The National Assembly made all the rules and passed orders. In the year 1789 A.D., 27th August, the Declaration of Human and Civilian Rights was adopted. The king's rule was replaced by a democratic government.

This process assumed a violent form. A group called Jacobites who wanted harsh reforms came to power. A fear surfaced in the administration based on the feeling that the revolution was becoming dangerous. The leader of this group Robispeare subjected all those supported the king to a machine called the guillotine which was invented for massacres.

Consequences

The French revolution became the precursor for a series of important events. Feudalism vanished. The special privileges that the clergy and the aristocrats had were all cancelled.

The lands of the rich were seized. The church came under the control of the state. A uniform system of administration came to be enforced throughout the country. People were assured liberty, equality and brotherhood.

UNIFICATION MOVEMENTS

UNIFICATION OF ITALY

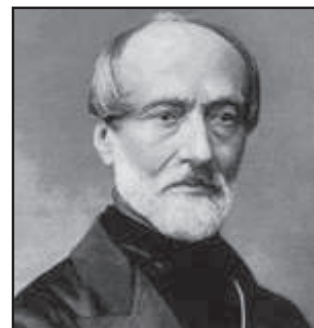
Although Italy, the country which had seen the glory of the ancient Roman civilization, spoke the same language, it had disintegrated. Roman Catholic religion had spread throughout Italy. Though it was eligible to become one nation, such an integration was impossible.



Italy had disintegrated into small states during the early part of 19th century. Of these, Lombardy, Venetia, Sicily, Naples (both Sicilian states), the Pope's states, Tuscany, Parma and Modena were important. Piedmont state included Sardinia, Piedmont and Genoa.

Between 1815 and 1848, there were a number of riots in various states of Italy. The main aim of all these riots and revolts was national freedom and national integration. Joseph Mazzini, Count Cavour and Garibaldi were the architects of Italy's unification.

Mazzini was a noted revolutionary thinker and writer. He provoked the youth of Italy by his writings in the book Italy, Austria, Papacy. He inspired people with feelings of national integration, freedom and rebellious thoughts and provoked them to revolt. He not only built an army called young Italy but also had the aims of achieving national freedom and integration.



Mazzini

Garibaldi was a soldier and fighter. He joined the Young Italy army and assumed leadership of the revolution. After that he constituted an army called Red Brigade and with the help of Sardinia, fought with Austria. In 1860, he fought against the twin states of Sicily using his Red Brigade. By conquering the same, he hastened the national integration and pressed for democratic reforms.



Garibaldi

The Sardinian Prime Minister Count Cavour was an important person in the unification of Italy. He was a journalist and he began a newspaper *Risorgimento* meant for the rejuvenation of Italian literature. He had a strong influence on the minds of people and kings through his powerful writings.

Count Cavour decided to drive out Austria from Italy and make Sardinia Italy's biggest and most powerful state. As soon as he assumed power as the Prime Minister of Sardinia, he began to work towards achieving his ambition. He brought about many reforms and made Italy a very progressive state.



Count Cavour

Count Cavour made a secret pact with France. He provoked Austria to war, and along with France, defeated Austria and drove it away from Lombardy. He merged Sardinia and Lombardy with Italy. There were revolutions in Tuscany, Modena, Parma and northern Pope's states, and they merged with Sardinia.

Count Cavour secretly encouraged Garibaldi to invade Sicily. In 1861 A.D., Victor Emmanuel was declared king of Italy. Italy acquired Venetia from Austria. Now only Rome remained outside Italy. In 1870, when war broke out between France and Prussia, France had to withdraw its army from Rome. Grabbing the opportunity, Victor Emmanuel invaded Rome and occupied it. Rome became the capital of Italy. With this, unification of Italy was completed.

UNIFICATION OF GERMANY

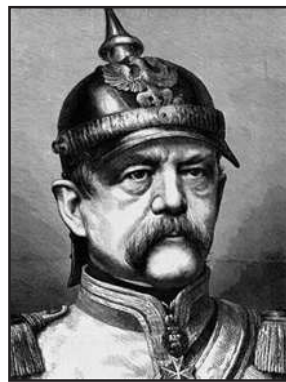
During the early part of 19th century A.D., Germany was a cluster of independent states. Among them, the larger and more powerful states were Wertenberg, Bavaria, Baden, Heas etc. The rest of them were small. They used to frequently attack each other. These states were politically weak and economically backward. Disappointed with the prevailing situation, they were waiting for reforms.

The French revolution kindled the nationalistic feelings of Germans. As a result, the people of these states started demanding national unity, social and economic reforms. Under the leadership of Austria, an association of the German states was formed. However, some of the kings of these states were trying their best to retain their independence as well as political and economic systems.

The German patriots and nationalists began various movements for democratic institutions and the unification of Germany. But those movements were suppressed and the revolutionaries were made to flee the nation. Prussia played a major role in these activities and saw economic progress and industrialization.

Bismarck

The architect of the unification of Germany was Otto-Von-Bismarck, He was the chief minister of the king of Prussia, Williams I. He had begun his career as a government servant, member of the assembly, i.e., Diet, and as an ambassador in various nations, and had gained lot of popularity. He was aware of the German states' association under the leadership of Austria, and knew about the activities and weaknesses of this organization. Having worked in Austria, France and Prussia as an ambassador, he had knowledge of their strengths and weaknesses. He knew that German unification was possible only by Prussia and desired to do so under the leadership of Prussia. To achieve this end, his aims were of two types: firstly, to drive out Austria from German states' association. Secondly, instead of losing identity with



Bismarck

Germany, convert Germany into Prussia. That meant inculcating the culture and traditions, and spread the administrative machinery and military power all over Germany.

Bismarck was aware that to resolve the situation, only 'blood and steel' philosophy would work. Blood and steel philosophy meant war tactics. Towards this end, he built a powerful army. His next aim was to drive out Austria from German states association.

Bismarck desired to merge two small states of Sheltzweig and Holstrein which were under the control of Denmark. He achieved his aim by associating with Austria. Later, Bismarck made an agreement with Italy according to which, in the event of war with Austria, he would seek their support. The well-formed German armies defeated Austria in the year 1866 A.D. and "North German States Association" was formed. The Prussian king was made the head of this association. His heirs would continue to head the association.

Even after driving Austria from the German soil, the unification of Germany was not complete. 16 German states in the south attached to France were still out of this association. Keeping Germany as a weak state was the aim of the emperor of France, Napoleon III. Bismarck realized that war was inevitable with France to achieve unification of Germany. Bismarck began war preparations. When Napoleon declared war on Prussia, southern German states defeated him. Due to this, he was able to merge the remaining states with the German states' association. With this, the unification of Germany was complete the Prussian king, William I, was bestowed the title of German emperor. The provinces of Alcase and Lorraine were handed over France to Germany.

EXERCISES

I. Fill in the blanks with suitable words.

1. The 13 colonies established by England on the Atlantic coast was called _____.
2. The representatives of the 13 colonies met in 1774 at _____.

3. Declaration of America's independence was on _____.
4. The writer of Spirit of Laws was _____.
5. The party 'Young Italy' was formed by _____.
6. The philosophy of 'blood and steel' was advocated by _____.

II. Answer the following questions.

1. Mention the reasons for American War of Independence.
2. Explain the significance of the American war of independence.
3. How were economic factors responsible for the French revolution?
4. What was the role of Garibaldi in Italy's unification?
5. Who was the architect of unification of Germany? Write a note on him.

III. Activities.

1. Discuss in detail with your teacher about the political strategies philosophers of the French Revolution period.
2. Discuss in groups the factors responsible for Italy's unification.

IV. Project work.

1. Collect the pictures of the thinkers during the French revolution and prepare an album.
2. Prepare a chart showing the revolutionaries of Italy's unification.

POLITICAL SCIENCE

CHAPTER – 1

OUR CONSTITUTION

We learn about the following in this chapter,

- the Constituent Assembly of constitution.
- the Constitution Drafting Committee and framing of Constitution.
- the Preamble to the Constitution.
- the salient features of the Constitution.
- the Fundamental Rights, Duties and Directive Principles of State policy.

India had to face many problems soon after independence. Rehabilitating the refugees who migrated from Pakistan, merger of the princely states, maintenance of law and order are the challenges during the beginning of independence. Sardar Patel successfully achieved the merger of princely states and provinces with the Union of India. Even the challenge of framing a Constitution in order to enable us to govern the country was also fulfilled. Now let us know about the structure of our Constitution, its characteristics, and about the Fundamental Rights and Duties mentioned therein.

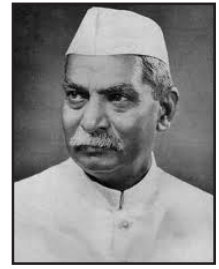
The Indian Constituent Assembly : Constitution is a set of rules and regulations guiding the administration of a State. The recommendations of the Motilal Nehru Committee and the decisions taken by the meeting of the National Congress at Karachi emphasised the need for the formation of a Constituent Assembly.

Do you know this ? Cabinet Committee :

Lord Patrick Lawrence – Indian Secretary for Parliamentary Affairs,
Sir Stafford Cripps – President of the Commerce Association,
A.V.Alexander – Captain of the Indian Navy



Dr.B.R.Ambedkar



Dr.Rajendra Prasad

The first meeting of the new Constituent Assembly was held on 9th December, 1946. The next meeting on 11th December 1946 under the Chairmanship of Dr. Rajendra Prasad. Eminent persons like Jawaharlal Nehru, Sardar Vallabhbhai Patel, Dr.B.R.Ambedkar,

Maulana Abul Kalam Azad, C.Rajagopalachari, K.M. Munshi, T.T.Krishnamachari, Smt. Sarojini Naidu, Smt.Sucheta Kripalani attended the meeting. Prominent people from Karnataka, S.Nijalingappa, K.C.Reddy, Kengal Hanumanthaiah, Tekur Subramanyam and others were also present.

Drafting Committee : The Constituent Assembly formed many Committees to examine in detail all the issues relating to the country. Dr.B.R.Ambedkar was the Chairman of one of the most important committees, i.e., the Drafting Committee. The other members of this committee were N.Gopalaswamy Iyengar, Alladi Krishnaswamy Aiyar, K.M.Munshi, T.T.Krishnamachari and some other eminent statesmen.

Framing of the Constitution: The Constituent Assembly which was constituted into existence on 11th December 1946, which held 145 meetings and framed a draft constitution. During these discussions, various laws enacted by the British Government in 1909, 1919 and 1935, the British Parliamentary system, the American Bill of Rights, the Social Directive Policies of Ireland were studied and some elements of those were incorporated. Finally, the Indian Constitution was approved on 26 November, 1949 and came into force on 26 January, 1950. This day (January 26) is celebrated as Republic Day.

Do you know this?

The demand for 'Poorna Swaraj' (Total Freedom) for India was adopted at the Lahore Session which took place on January 26, 1930. It was to commemorate this event that the new Constitution was adopted on January 26, 1950.

Preamble to the constitution

The Indian Constitution has combined in itself the best features of different constitutions of the world and has its own Preamble. The Preamble contains the fundamental policies and ideals of the constitution. It is the sum of the structure, values, principles and goals of the constitution. It is based on the aspirations and ideals of the people of India.

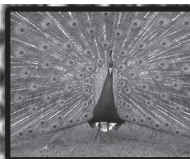
The Preamble is a part of the 'Objective Resolution' put forward by Jawaharlal Nehru on December 13, 1946 and approved by the Constituent Assembly on January 22, 1947. India was still undivided then. After India was divided and achieved Independence in August 1947, the objective resolution was slightly altered and approved. This resolution upholds the natures of India's sovereign, democratic, republic nature. Social, economic and political justice for all people is upheld.

The Preamble to our Constitution is meaningful. It describes our political system and is a key to understand our Constitution. It has been described as the 'Jewel of the Constitution'. K.M.Munshi has referred to it as a 'Political Horoscope'.

WE, The Indian Citizens : The Indian Constitution has been framed by Indians themselves. We the people of India worked hard at framing rules that would enable the realization of the aspirations of all Indians.

Sovereign : India is a sovereign country and not under the control of any other country in the world. It is not a part of any block. It has its own foreign policies, non-alignment policy and five-year plans, by implementing which the country has achieved internal and external autonomy.

Socialist : The goal of our constitution is to create social equality and promote welfare of all the people in our country. To enable this, Directive Principles of State Policy have been incorporated in the Constitution through the 42nd amendment.



PREAMBLE TO THE CONSTITUTION

We, THE PEOPLE OF INDIA, having solemnly resolved to constitute India into a **SOVEREIGN SOCIALIST, SECULAR, DEMOCRATIC REPUBLIC** and to **SECURE TO ALL ITS CITIZENS:**

JUSTICE, social, economic and political;

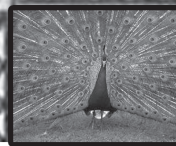
LIBERTY of thought, expression, belief, faith and worship;

EQUALITY of status and of opportunity; and to promote among them all:

FRATERNITY assuring the dignity of the individual and the unity and integrity of the Nation.

IN OUR CONSTITUENT ASSEMBLY this twenty-sixth day of November, 1949, do **HEREBY ADOPT, ENACT AND GIVE TO OURSELVES THIS CONSTITUTION.**

(The words **SOCIALIST** and **SECULAR** were added by the 42nd Constitution Amendment Act, 1976)



Secular : The word 'Secular' has been incorporated in the Constitution through the 42nd Amendment in 1976. No religion has been given the status of a National Religion, So India is a secular country. Citizens have the liberty to practise any religion they desire. That is the reason we can see religious harmony in India.

Democratic Republic : Securing the happiness of everyone is the responsibility of a government in a democracy. Problems are solved through discussions. Elections are held every five years through universal adult franchise. The fact that our Head of State is the President of India who is elected for a period of five years proves that our country is a Republic.

SALIENT FEATURES OF OUR CONSTITUTION :

Written and Lengthy Constitution : Our Constitution is in written form. The powers and functions of the organs of the government like the Legislature, Executive and Judiciary have been delineated in the constitution. Fundamental Rights, Duties, Directive Principles of State Policy etc. are all in the written form. Originally, our constitution consisted of 22 chapters, 8 schedules and 395 Articles. Later, after many amendments, it has become a lengthy constitution with 25 chapters, 12 schedules and 450 Articles.

Flexible and Rigid Constitution : The constitution which can be easily amended is called flexible or simple constitution. Constitutions that have special procedures for amendment are called rigid or complicated constitutions. Our constitution is neither too flexible nor too rigid.

Parliamentary Form of Government : Our Constitution provides for a Parliamentary form of Government. The sovereign power of the nation is vested in the elected Parliament. The Executive is responsible to the Legislature at the Central and State levels. The Cabinet shall be power as long as it enjoys the confidence of the legislature. As soon as it loses the confidence of the Legislature, it has to resign.

Republican System : The Constitution has declared India a republic. Therefore, no one can come to power through hereditary principle.

(This practice is prevalent in England). Though it is democratic, it is not a republic. In India, the President is the Constitutional Head of State and he is elected.

Federal System : Our Constitution provides for a Federal System of Government because our country consists of different languages, castes, races and geographical regions. Administrative powers are shared by the Central and the State Governments (The Central list has 100 subjects, the State list has 61 subjects and the Concurrent list has 52 subjects). The Supreme Court possesses powers to solve all disputes rising between the centre and the state with respect to any subject.

Fundamental Rights : The rights that the constitution has given to the people are called Fundamental Rights. No law of any government Central or state, or any organisation can deny these rights. If the Fundamental Rights are taken away or endangered, the citizen can directly appeal to the High Court or the Supreme Court. These Rights are listed in the 3rd part of the constitution. Here the six Fundamental Rights, namely, Right to Liberty, Right to Equality, Right against Exploitation, Right to Religion, Right to Education and Culture, and Right to Constitutional Remedy are explained. The Supreme Court has the powers to protect these Rights. Hence, the Supreme Court is referred to as 'The Protector of Fundamental Rights'.

Fundamental Duties : Duties are our responsibilities towards our country. 11 Fundamental Duties have been delineated in the 'A' part of the 4th Chapter under clause 51 'A' of our Constitution. Through the 86th Amendment to the Constitution in 2002, it has been made a duty of parents to provide compulsory education to their children aged between 6 to 14 years. This is the 11th duty mentioned in the Constitution.

Directive Principles of State Policy : Directive principles of State policy have been incorporated in the 4th schedule of our Constitution. These principles have been adopted from the Irish Constitution. They are the basis for the establishment of social and economic equality. They are the basic principles required for the administration of the

country. Yet, the government cannot be questioned by a court of justice if it does not implement them. When the government frames new laws, it should pay attention to these principles.

Independent and Centralized Judiciary System : Our judiciary is independent and centralized. The courts have the authority to give bold judgments in order to protect the rights of people. Neither the legislature nor the executive has no right to interfere with the working of the judiciary. The Supreme Court is the highest court in the land, and all high courts and subordinate courts function under it.

Single Citizenship : The Constitution makes provision for single citizenship in order to curb narrow-minded provincialism, and promote nationalism. The citizens of this country have the same rights, irrespective of their place of birth or residence. The legislature possesses the power to frame rules in this matter.

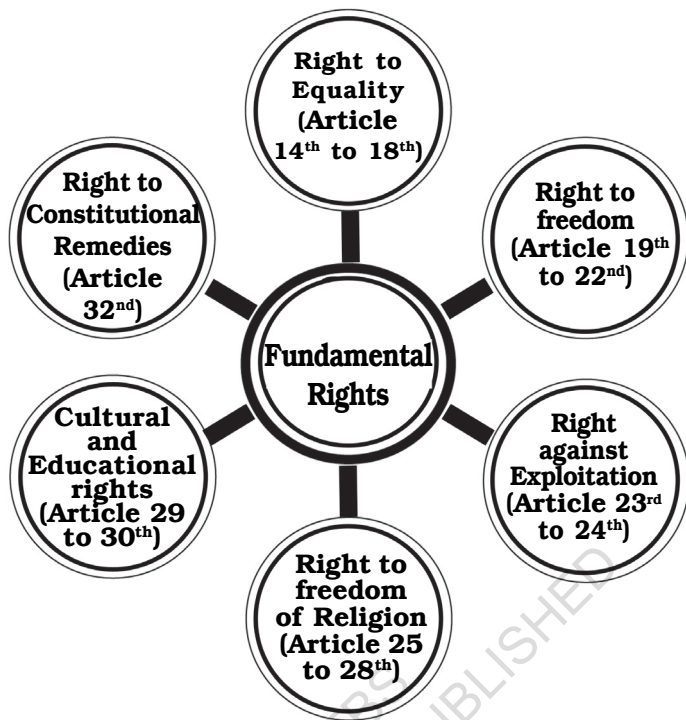
Adult Franchise : The Constitution provides for adult franchise. All citizens above 18 years of age may exercise their right to vote. It symbolizes the Sovereignty absolute power of the people.

Bicameral Legislature : The central Legislature is called Parliament. The Parliament consists of two Houses – the Lower House (Lok Sabha) and the Upper House (Rajya Sabha).

Party System : Political parties are the pillars of a democracy. There is a multi-party system in India. The party which wins the majority of votes in the general election becomes the ruling party whereas the rest will be the opposition parties.

Fundamental Rights and Duties :

Fundamental Rights provide the social and political atmosphere necessary for the development of the personality of citizens. They are required for a person to lead a civilised life in society. They are also essential for the success of a democracy. There were 7 Fundamental Rights mentioned in the 3rd part of our Constitution. However, after the 44th Amendment, the right to property has been abolished. There are 6 Fundamental Rights at present :



Do you know this ?

In 1895, the National Congress urged the implementation of rights of citizens

In 1895, Bal Gangadhar Tilak had demanded rights for people in his 'Swarajya Bill'.

In 1925, Dr. Annie Besant declared in 'Commonwealth of India Bill' that Individual freedom, Freedom of Conscience, Freedom of Speech and Equality before Law are very important.

The Cabinet Mission of 1946 supported Fundamental Rights.

Right to Equality : This right is very essential for the success of democracy. Under this, all citizens are equal socially and economically before the law. All are equal before the Law and nobody is above the Law. All should get equal protection of the Law, and none should be discriminated against on the basis of their caste, religion, gender or place of birth. No citizen should be subjected to any restrictions with regard to access to shops, public restaurants, hotels, places of public entertainment or public places of worship. Under this Right, untouchability is an offence. This Right has enabled every citizen to get an equal opportunity to join government service.

Right to freedom : It is one of the important Fundamental Rights. Under this right one who express his own opinion, to conduct meetings without arms, to establish organisations, to live anywhere in India and to follow any profession and move around the country. It is a defensive right also and no one can be arrested without proper reason. No state law can snatch the life and freedom of a citizen.

Right against exploitation : The aim of this Right is to prevent exploitation of women, children, the poor and the weak. Begging for alms, the devadasi system, the practice of sati, immoral activities and forced labour have been prohibited. Employment of children under 14 years of age in mining, industries and other dangerous occupations is punishable under law.

Do you know this ?

The Central Government has implemented many laws prohibiting exploitation.

Minimum Wages Act – 1948	Immoral Activities Act – 1956
Dowry Prohibition Act – 1961	Removal of Bonded Labour Act – 1976
Sati Prevention Act -1987	Protection of Human Rights Act – 1993,
Domestic Violence Act – 2005 etc	

Right to freedom of religion: Since India is a secular country, no religion has been given the status of a national religion. Citizens can accept any religion that their conscience dictates, practise it and propagate it. No one can be forced to pay taxes for the management of religious institutions. Use of religious places for political and other activities has been prohibited in the country.

Cultural and educational rights : All citizens of the country have their own language, script and culture. It is the duty of the State to protect them. This Right protects the interests of religious and linguistic minorities. No one can be denied admission in a government-aided institution or institutions run by minorities.

Do you know this ?

Through the 86th Amendment to the Constitution in 2002, education has been made a right under Article 21 'A'. Under this Right, the State should provide compulsory and free education for all children aged between 6 to 14 years . The Karnataka Government has brought into practice the Right to Education Act (RTE) in 2009.

Right to Constitutional remedies: The Constitution has not only given Fundamental Rights to the citizens of India but also guaranteed them under Article 32. Whenever the Rights are violated either by a person or State Government or the Central Government, the citizens may appeal directly to the Supreme court for their protection. Dr.B.R.Ambedkar has called this Right 'the heart and soul' of the Constitution. The Supreme Court is empowered to enforce the Fundamental Rights. Hence it is called 'The Protector of Fundamental Rights'. This court can accept the following writ petitions for the protection of citizens' rights :

a. Habeas Corpus : When a person is been arrested without a reason, he or anyone else can file this petition on his behalf, asking for his release. The arrested person has to be produced before the court within 24 hours. (This writ petition does not apply to criminal cases.)

b. Mandamus : When an official refuses to exercise his power or discharge his social duties, or when a subordinate court refuses to discharge its duty, the Supreme Court or the High Court can issue a Direction to the concerned asking them to carry out their responsibilities.

c. Prohibition : This is a prohibitory order issued in a written form by the Supreme Court preventing a subordinate court from trying a case or issuing a judgment in cases beyond the limits of its authority.

d. Certiorari : This is an order issued by the Supreme Court to the lower courts asking them to transfer their cases to the higher courts when ever they try the cases beyond their limits of authority. The Supreme Court also annuls the judgment given by those courts in such cases.

Activity :

Collect the information about the Human rights commission in the state. Collect the information about the action taken by H.R.C in case of vidention of Human Rights.

- e. Co-warrant :** A co-warrant is issued in order to interrogate in court the person who has occupied a government post without possessing the required qualification for it.

Public interest litigations have been filed in courts in order to protect the social rights denied to citizens and to protect public interest. Public interest litigations can be filed for the purpose of protecting legal rights, rights are essential to protect life and to protect environment from being polluted. These public interest litigations can be filed by individuals and social institutions. In recent years we see that courts on their own are filing such public interest litigations when situations arise.

Fundamental Duties

Rights and Duties are the two faces of the same coin. Rights without duties have no value or significance. 10 Fundamental Duties were included in 4th Chapter 'A' part, Article 51 'A' with the 42nd Amendment to the Constitution, with the 86th Amendment in 2002, there are now 11 Fundamental duties. They are :

1. To respect the Constitution, National Flag and National Anthem.
2. To follow the noble ideals that inspired our National Struggle for Freedom.
3. To protect the integrity of India.
4. To defend the motherland when called upon to do so.
5. To promote the spirit of common brotherhood amongst all the people of India.
6. To preserve our rich heritage.
7. To protect and improve the natural environment.
8. To develop the scientific temper and the spirit of enquiry.
9. To safeguard public property and to abstain violence.
10. To strive towards excellence in all spheres of individual and collective activities.

11. The Parents or the guardians should provide an opportunity for education to their children from the age of 6 to 14 years.

Unlike fundamental rights, there is no protection from a court of law with regard to duties. However, there will be punishment under law for those who violate their duties.

Directive Principles of State Policy : With an aim to establish a Welfare State, certain directive principles of state policy have been incorporated in the Constitution. These principles serve as guidelines to the State.

The framers of our constitution were inspired by the Irish constitution to include such directive principles. These directive principles are in the form of directions to the Central and State governments. Through these, the government intends to provide economic, social and political justice to its citizens. But these principles are based on ethics. So, if the governments, Central or State, do not implement them, they cannot be questioned in a court of law. These principles are socialist and liberal and have been based on Gandhian ideals. The Directive Principles are :

Discuss :

As a citizen of India enjoining the fundamental rights. As well as must do our duties.

1. To provide adequate means of livelihood to all citizens.
2. To prevent the community wealth and resources from becoming the private property of a few people.
3. To provide equal pay for equal work to both men and women and to protect labour welfare.
4. To provide public assistance to those who are old, sick and weak or helpless.
5. To implement a Uniform Civil Code throughout the country.
6. To provide opportunities for the development of health and pre-school education to all children below 6 years.
7. To protect historical monuments and maintain places of historical interest.
8. To separate the Executive from the Judiciary.

9. To protect international peace and to respect international law.
10. To establish Gram Panchayats.
11. To encourage rural and cottage industries.
12. To organise and develop agriculture and animal husbandry on modern lines.
13. To ensure prohibition of liquor.
14. To ensure development of farming based on scientific methods.

The Directive Principles of State Policy are important. They aim to achieve social welfare. While Fundamental Rights relate to an individual, the Directive Principles of State Policy relate to a whole community. The Central and the State Governments are making attempts to implement all the principles. These principles aim at holistic development in India.

EXERCISES

I. Fill in the blanks with suitable words.

1. The Law which governs the States is _____.
2. The meeting of new Constituent Assembly was held on _____.
3. The Chairman of the Drafting Committee of the Constitution was _____.
4. Our Constitution provides for a _____ system of Government.
5. The State where the people enjoy sovereign power is called _____.
6. Our Constitution provides for _____ citizenship to its citizens.
7. The Right for Constitutional Remedies has been incorporated in Article _____.
8. The Directive Principles of State Policy are borrowed from _____ Constitution.

II. Answer the following questions.

1. Who was the President of the Constituent Assembly?
2. When did the Constitution come into force?
3. What does the Preamble to the Constitution contain?
4. What do you mean by 'Secularism'?
5. Explain the salient features of our Constitution.
6. Which are the Fundamental Rights incorporated in our Constitution?
7. Make a List of the Fundamental Duties.
8. Which are the Directive Principles of State Policy?

III. Activities.

1. Collect information with figures about the prominent leaders who were members of the Constituent Assembly.
2. List out the Fundamental Rights we enjoy.
3. List out the Fundamental duties.
4. Discuss the hurdles to implement uniform laws in our country.

IV. Project.

Write an essay on Fundamental Rights and Duties with the help of your teacher, and discuss them.

THE UNION GOVERNMENT

We learn about the following in this chapter,

- the Rajya Sabha and Lok Sabha, their structure, membership, qualifications and functions .
- the election of the President, qualification to become president.
- the Prime Minister, and his functions.
- the responsibilities and functions of the Supreme Court and the High Courts, Uniform Judiciary System.

We have learnt in the previous lesson that India is a Sovereign, Socialist, Secular, Democratic Republic. England and France have a Unitary System of Government. India, like the United States of America, has a Federal System of Government. That means there is a Union Government at the Centre and State Governments in the States. India is a Union of States. The powers of the nation are divided between the Centre and the States. However, the Central Government has been given more powers in view of the unity and security of the nation. It exercises these powers through the Legislature, Executive and Judiciary.

UNION LEGISLATURE

India has adopted the Parliamentary system of government and the Union Legislature is called the Parliament. Article 79 provides for the creation of Parliament. The Parliament consists of two Houses. The Upper House is called Rajya Sabha and the Lower House is called Lok Sabha.

Rajya Sabha :

The number of seats in the Rajya Sabha is 250, of which 238 members are elected by the members of the State Assemblies and Union Territories. This member The remaining 12 members, who are experts from various fields like literature, art, science and social work are nominated by the President. This House is also known as the House of Elders.

Term of Office : The Rajya Sabha is a permanent body and is not dissolved like the Lok Sabha. But the term of the members is six years. One-third of its members retire on completion of six year term every second year. In their place new members are elected. If the members do not wish to continue, they may resign.

Qualifications required to become a Member of Rajyasabha

1. Should be a citizen of India.
2. Should not be less than 30 years of age.
3. Should not have been punished under law.
4. Should not have been declared to be a person of unsound mind by a court of law.
5. Should possess the qualifications specified from time to time by the Parliament.

The Vice-President is the Chairman of the Rajya Sabha. The Deputy Chairman is chosen from among the members. At least $\frac{1}{10}$ of the members (a minimum of 25 members) should be present during the sessions of the Rajya Sabha. The House should meet at least twice in a year. The members may request for a special session.

Lok Sabha :

The members of the Lok Sabha are elected directly by the people, so, it is known as the House of People. The maximum number of seats is 545. 543 members are directly elected by the people. Whereas two Anglo-Indians are nominated by the President. 79 seats are reserved for Scheduled Castes and 41 seats are reserved for Scheduled Tribes.

Term of Office : The Lok Sabha members are elected for a term of five years. However, on the recommendation of the Prime Minister, the President may dissolve the Lok Sabha, during emergency. The term may be extended for one year.

Qualifications of the Members :

1. Should be a citizen of India.
2. Must not be less than 25 years of age.
3. Should not hold any office of profit under the Government.

4. Should not be a person of unsound mind.
5. Should not have been punished under law.
6. Should possess qualifications as specified by Parliament from time to time.

Lok Sabha Speaker : There is a provision for the members to elect from among themselves a Speaker and a Deputy Speaker. The Speaker has to impartially conduct the proceedings of the House. He should maintain the dignity and decorum of the House. When bills get equal number of votes for and against them, the Speaker casts the deciding vote. The Deputy speaker conducts the proceedings in the absence of the Speaker.

Role and work of opposition leader :

- Highlight the wrong doings of the ruling government.
- Examine thoroughly the policies of the government.
- Keep the government, council of ministers and officials alert.
- Enjoys dignity in the legislature.

Activity :

Conduct a Mock parliament in your school and get the experience as Prime Minister, speaker, and opposition leader.

POWERS AND FUNCTIONS OF THE PARLIAMENT :

Legislative powers : The main function of the Parliament is to make laws. It can frame laws on subjects mentioned in the Central list. The Financial Bill is presented only in the Lok Sabha. The other bills can be presented in either House. But the bills become laws only after proper discussion and approval by both the Houses. The Speaker casts his vote when a particular bill receives equal number of votes supporting and opposing it. When there is disagreement between the Houses regarding a bill, the President may call for a Joint Session of the Parliament and resolve the matter. After both the Houses pass the bill, it is forwarded to the President for his approval, after which it becomes law.

Activity :

Observe proceedings of the parliament session in T.V and write a note about the following :

- 1) Role of the Speaker.
- 2) Role of the opposition party
- 3) Role of the leader of the Ruling party .

Administrative powers : In a Parliamentary system of government, the Prime Minister and his Council of Ministers form the Executive. The Union Cabinet is accountable to the Parliament. The Members of the Parliament ask questions which must be answered by the Ministers. The Council of Ministers can be in power only as long as they enjoy the trust of the Parliament. Parliament has control over the executive.

Financial powers : Lok Sabha exercises total control over the financial matters of the country. The government cannot levy any tax or spend any money without the approval of the Lok Sabha. The Finance bill must be first introduced in the Lok Sabha. After being passed by the Lok Sabha, the bill goes to the Rajya Sabha for discussion. The Rajya Sabha can give certain suggestions and directions, and also delay giving its consent to the bill for fourteen days. If it does give its consent to the bill, it is taken for granted that the Rajya Sabha has approved it. It is then sent to the President for his assent.

Judicial powers : Both the Houses of the Parliament have the authority to remove the President as well as the judges of the Supreme Court and the High Court through a Motion of Impeachment. They also have the powers to discuss the findings of reports related to the judiciary.

Power to amend Constitution: Both the Houses of Parliament have equal powers to amend the Constitution. The Amendment Bill can be presented first in either House. However, the approval of both the Houses is required for the Amendment. If only one House approves for the Amendment and the other does not, then the Amendment cannot be carried out. In some cases the approval of the state assemblies is also essential.

Other powers :

1. To frame laws relating to the powers and jurisdiction of the Supreme Court and the High Courts.
2. To establish one High Court for two or more States.
3. To create new States, rename them or to determine the boundaries of States.

4. To discuss the reports of committees like the Public Services Commission, Finance Commission, Election Commission, Backward Classes Commission etc.
5. To approve the declaration of Emergencies like the National Emergency, State Emergency and Financial Emergency.



Samsat Bhavan (Parliament house)

UNION EXECUTIVE

The Executive implements the laws framed by the Union Legislature. It also implements the Programmes and policies of the Union Government. The Union Executive consists of the President, Prime Minister and his Council of Ministers. The President is the head of the Executive only in name, whereas the Prime Minister and his Cabinet form the actual Executive.

PRESIDENT

Article 52 of our Constitution has created the post of the President. The Indian President is the Constitutional head of the country. He is the first citizen, the Head of the Executive and also the Commander-in-chief of all the three armed forces (Army, Navy and Air Force). He enjoys the highest position in the country as he is the Custodian of all Executive powers of the nation. No court of law can question his conduct or prosecute him.

Election of the President : Articles 54 and 55 of the Constitution stipulate the way the President should be elected. The President is elected by an electoral college of elected members of both Houses of Parliament, all elected members of the legislative assemblies of all States, New Delhi and Pondicherry. The Supreme Court judge administers him the oath of office. His term of office is five years. He is eligible for re-election. When he goes against the Constitution, he can be removed from office by the Parliament through a Motion of Impeachment.

Motion of Impeachment : *The President is a fundamental part of the parliament, and also the protector of the constitution. He has to ensure that no one violates the constitution. If the President himself violates the constitutions he can be impeached under Article 61. This impeachment can be carried out in either house of parliament. Advance notice of 14 days should be given for the debate. This should be supported by $\frac{1}{4}$ of the members. After discussion in both houses if $\frac{2}{3}$ of the members vote for the motion, the President is removed from the office. It is called impeachment. So far no President is impeached in India.*

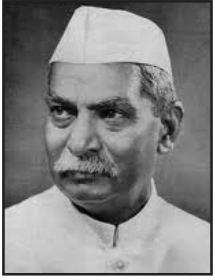
Qualifications :

1. He should be a citizen of India.
2. He should have completed the age of 35 years.
3. He should be qualified for election as a Member of the Lok Sabha.
4. He should not hold any office of profit under the Government.



Rashtrapathi Bhavan

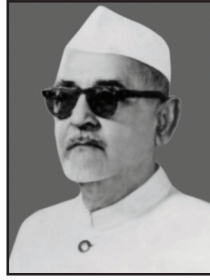
OUR PRESIDENTS



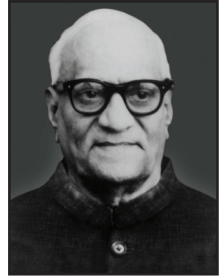
Dr. Rajendra Prasad
1950-1962



Dr. S. Radhakrishnan
1962-1967



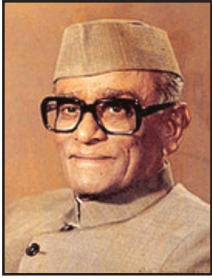
Dr. Zakir Hussain
1967-1969



Dr. V.V. Giri
1969-1974



Dr. Fakhruddin Ali Ahmed
1974-1977



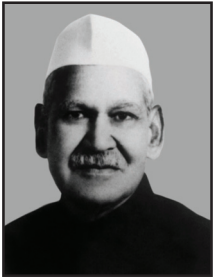
Sri Neelam Sanjiva Reddy
1977-1982



Sri Gyani Zail Singh
1982-1987



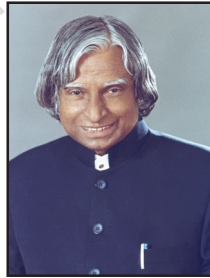
Sri R. Venkataraman
1987-1992



Dr. Shankar Dayal Sharma
1992-1997



Dr. K.R. Narayan
1997-2002



Dr. A.P.J. Abdul Kalam
2002-2007



Smt. Pratibha Patil
2007-2012



Sri Pranab Mukharjee

2012-

Powres of the President

Executive Powers : All administration is carried out in the name of the President. The President appoints the Prime Minister and on his recommendation appoints the other ministers. The President has the powers to appoint persons to high posts like Auditor General, Comptroller and Auditor General, Judges of the Supreme Court and High Courts, Governors, Chairman and Members of the Finance Commission, Chairman and Members of the Union Public Service Commission, Election Commissioners, Commanders-in-Chief to the three Armed Forces and the Ambassadors to different countries. Similarly, he has the power to terminate them also.

Legislative Powers : The President has the power to summon the Parliament or postpone its sessions. He may also address a joint sitting of both Houses or dissolve the Lok Sabha. A Bill passed by both the Houses becomes an Act only after it receives the approval of the President. The President may either re-examine such Bills, return them or withhold them for some time. He may also nominate two Anglo-Indians to the Lok Sabha and 12 Members to the Rajya Sabha. In all these functions, he acts upon the recommendations of the Prime Minister and his Council of Ministers.

Judicial Powers : The President has the power to reduce the term of imprisonment of criminals, and to cancel the capital punishment. He can approach the Supreme Court for suggestions with reference to legal matters of the country.

Financial Powers : A finance bill can be introduced in the Lok Sabha with out the permission of the President. It is only after the President grants permission that the reports of the Finance Commission and the Comptroller and Auditor General are discussed in Parliament. The consolidated Fund is in the name of the President. It is from this Fund that the Judges of the Supreme Court and the Chairman and Members of the Public Service Commission receive their salaries.

Military Powers : The President is the Commander-in-Chief of the Armed Forces. He appoints the Chiefs of the Army, Navy and Air Force on the recommendation of the Union Cabinet. He also declares war and peace on the recommendation of the Parliament.

Emergency Powers : Based on the written recommendation of the Union Cabinet, the President can declare Emergency on three occasions: 1) Under Article 352 - National Emergency. 2) Under Article 356 - State Emergency. 3) Under Article 360 - Financial Emergency. The approval of the Parliament has to be secured within one month of declaration of any kind of emergency.

Discuss

Discuss with your teacher about the position in the time of Emergency declared in Karnataka.

Do you know this ?

1. **National Emergency (Article 352) :** When there is a threat to the security of any area in the country or the whole of it through external attack or internal disturbances, this kind of emergency can be imposed. Ex. in 1962, 1971, 1975.
2. **State Emergency (Article 356) :** Based on the report of the governor of a state or if the state government for any reason cannot function according to the principles of the constitution the president can declare emergency under Article 356. (Ex. From 20.1.2008 to 29-5-2008 in Karnataka. Elections have to be conducted within six months of the declaration of National or state Emergency.
3. **Financial Emergency (Art 360) :** This kind of emergency can be declared if it is felt that the financial situation in the country has deteriorated. However, it has not been declared till now.

Discretionary Powers : The President can exercise certain powers without waiting for approval of the Union Cabinet. They are:

1. He may invite the leader of any party to form the government when no single party has got a majority after an election.
2. When the Parliament approves a Bill and sends it to him for assent, he may return the Bill for re-consideration.
3. He may dissolve the Lok Sabha on the recommendation of the Prime Minister.

PRIME MINISTER

The Constitution has provided for a Council of Ministers with the Prime Minister as its Head to assist and advise the President in the administration of the country. Still it is the Prime Minister who has the real power to carry out the administration. The President is the Head of the Country, whereas the Prime Minister is the Head of the Government. He remains in office as long as he enjoys the trust of the Lok Sabha.

Powers of the Prime Minister

Appointment and Removal of Ministers, and Allocation of Portfolios : The Prime Minister recommends to the President the appointment of Ministers to the Council of Ministers. He also allocates the various portfolios among the Ministers. His decision is final in the allocation of portfolios. He can remove controversial ministers and those who have been accused of wrong-doing.

Head of Government : The Prime Minister is responsible for all actions of the Government. He co-ordinates the activities of the various Ministers. He takes greater interest in framing policies related to planning, defence and foreign affairs.

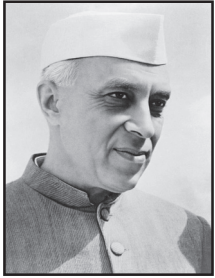
Head of Union Cabinet : The meetings of the Union Cabinet are held under the Chairmanship of the Prime Minister. All discussions of issues of national and international importance are discussed and decisions are taken under his chairmanship. He is the link between the President and the Cabinet.

Union Cabinet

The Union Cabinet is the real Executive, and has Ministers in two hierarchies. The first one is the Cabinet level and the second is the Ministers of State.

The maximum strength of the Union Cabinet is 15% of the total strength of the Parliament. The Cabinet has two kinds of responsibilities : The Minister of every department is responsible for the administration of his department. He has individual responsibility for the success or failure of his department. The Union Cabinet has collective responsibility to the Parliament with regard to the decisions and policies taken by it. Therefore, the Cabinet can be in power only

OUR PRIME MINISTERS



Pandit Jawahar Lal Nehru
1947–1964



Sri Lal Bahadur Shastri
1964–1966



Smt. Indira Gandhi
1966–77–1980–84



Sri Morarji Desai
1977–1979



Sri Charan Singh
1979–1980



Sri Rajiv Gandhi
1984–89



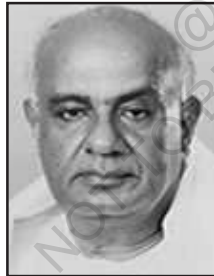
Sri V.P. Singh
1989–1990



Sri Chandra Shekhar
1990 Nov.–1991 June



Sri. P.V. Narasimharao
1991–1996



Sri. H.D. Devegowda
1996 June–1997 April



Sri. I.K. Gujral
1997 April–1998 March



Sri. Atal Bihari Vajpayee
May 18, 1996–31 May 1996
19 March 1998–May 2004



Dr. Manmohan Singh
2004 – 2014



Sri. Narendra Modi
2014 –

as long as it enjoys the trust of the Parliament. When it loses the trust, it is removed by a No-Confidence Motion.

Do you know this ?

No-confidence Motion : *If a majority of the Lok Sabha members lose their confidence on and withdraw support to the Prime Minister and his Cabinet, the Prime Minister as well as his cabinet ministers will have to resign. The motion passed by the Lok Sabha members at the Centre and the Vidhana Sabha members at the state level asking for resignation of the ruling party and government at the centre and state respectively because they do not trust then any more is called No-Confidence Motion thus, the term of office of the union government and the state government depend on the trust of the Lok Sabha and Vidhana Sabha respectively. Rajya Sabha members and Vidhana Parishat members do not enjoy this privilege. Till now, around 34 No Confidence Motions have been passed in the Indian Parliament.*

UNION JUDICIARY

We have a common judicial system for the entire country unlike the American judicial system where there are separate courts for the Centre and the States. Our judiciary is independent of the guidance of the Legislature and Executive. The High Courts, Subordinate Courts and District Courts function under the Supreme Court. The Constitution, various Acts, conventions and precedents of cases are the bases for judicial judgments. The Supreme Court is the highest court of law. Its judgment is final.

Supreme Court : The Supreme Court came into existence by an Act of Parliament on January 28, 1950. It is in New Delhi.

The President appoints the Chief Justice and the other judges of the Supreme Court. At present, there are 31 judges including the Chief Justice.

The qualifications of a Supreme Court judge are:

1. Should be a citizen of India.
2. Should have served as a High Court Judge for at least five years, or should have been an advocate of the High Court for at least ten years.
3. Should be a distinguished jurist.



Supreme Court, New Delhi

The age of retirement of the Chief Justice of the Supreme Court is 65 years, whereas the age of retirement of the other judges is 62 years. However, they can resign earlier. If the judges are found guilty while discharging their duties, they can be removed from office by the President supported by a specified majority vote of both the Houses of Parliament. After their resignation or retirement, the judges cannot practise before any court. Their salaries and allowances are decided by an Act of Parliament.

Functions and powers

Original Powers : Resolving the disputes between the Union and the States, and between the States; Safeguarding the Fundamental Rights of citizens; Interpreting the provisions of the Constitution and Enquires the Habeas Corpus also.

Appellate Powers : Citizens may file cases in the Supreme court against the judgements given in the lower courts. The Supreme Court may accept such appeals and issue judgments in these matters. It may also give special directions to the citizens to file such appeals.

Advisory Powers : The Supreme Court may advise the President when he seeks its opinion on important public issues. The President may consult the Supreme Court for advice on matters related to agreements and contracts formed before the Constitution was implemented.

In addition to the above-mentioned functions, the Supreme Court serves as a Court of Records, Chief Advisor to the Centre and States, and has the power to issue special writs.

High Court

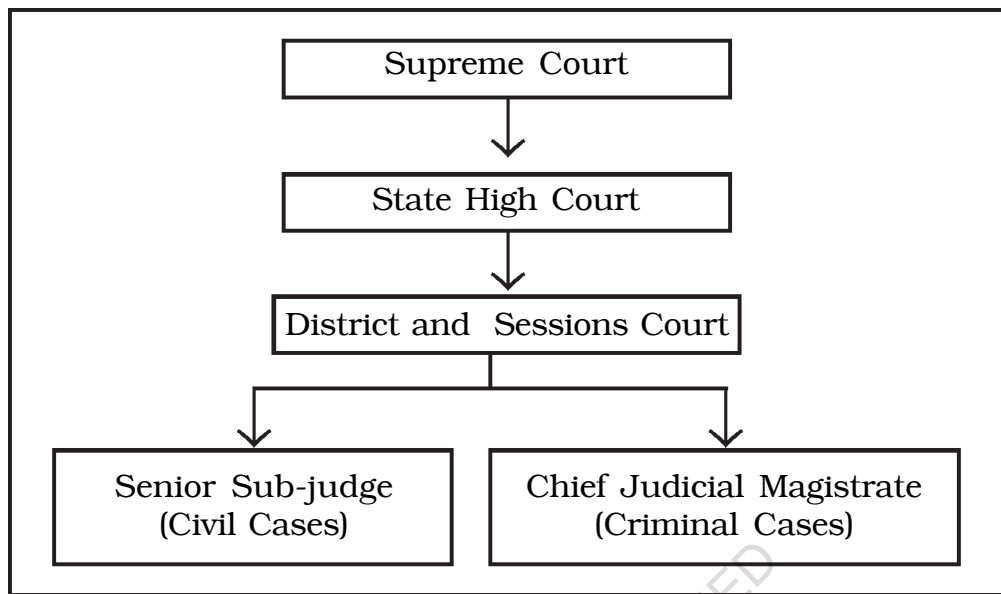
The Constitution provides for a High Court in every State. Sometimes there is one High Court for two or more States. The High Court consists of the Chief Justice and other judges. The number of judges varies from State to State.



High Court

Do you know this?

1. *The British established three High Courts in India for the first time in Calcutta, Bombay and Madras in 1862. At present, there are 21 High Courts in India.*
2. *There is one High Court for the States of Punjab and Haryana. Similarly, there is one High Court in Guwahati in Assam state, Assam, Manipur, Meghalaya, Tripura, Nagaland, Mizoram and Arunachal Pradesh.*
3. *In Karnataka along with the high court at Bangalore. There is a court Established in Dharwad and Gulbarga.*



The qualifications of a High Court judge are :

1. Should be a citizen of India.
2. Should have served as a judiciary officer in a Judicial office. or worked as an advocate of the High Court for ten years.
3. Should be an eminent jurist.

The age of retirement of High Court judges is 62 years. Their salary is decided by an Act of the Parliament. The constitutional Amendment Act 15 of 1963 raised the retirement age from 60 to 62. The Union Cabinet approved this and implemented it on 31 July 2010.

Functions of the High Court :

The High Court has power over the whole State. Its functions are :

1. To take up civil and criminal disputes, marital relationships, contempt of court etc.

2. To admit appeals in civil and criminal cases from the subordinate courts.
3. To direct transfer of cases from the lower courts to the High Court; to supervise the working of the subordinate courts; to admit writ petitions to safeguard the Fundamental Rights and other legal rights of citizens.

EXERCISES

I. Fill in the blanks with suitable words.

1. India is a Union of _____.
2. The Union Legislature is called _____.
3. The Chairman of the Rajya Sabha is the _____.
4. One has to complete _____ years to become a member of the Lok Sabha.
5. The Commander-in-Chief of the three Armed Forces is the _____.
6. The process for electing the President is explained under Articles _____ and _____ of the Constitution.
7. The Chairman of the Union Public Service Commission is appointed by _____.
8. The Supreme Court came into existence on _____.

II. Answer the following questions.

1. Name the two Houses of the Parliament.
2. Explain the composition of the Rajya Sabha.
3. What are the qualifications needed to become a member of the Lok Sabha?

4. Explain the election process for the post of President.
5. List out the powers of the Prime Minister.
6. Explain the composition of the Union Cabinet and its responsibilities.
7. How are the judges of the Supreme Court appointed and what are their qualifications?
8. What are the functions of the High Court?

III. Activity.

1. Meet an advocate in your town and learn more about the Supreme Court.
2. Have a mock Parliament in your school.
3. Meet the legislator of your constituency and discuss his work.

IV. Project Work.

1. Draw a picture of the Parliament and display in your school.
2. Collect reports of High Court judgments from newspapers and prepare an album.

STATE GOVERNMENT

We learn about the following in this chapter,

- the nature of the State Legislature, the Legislative Assembly (Vidhana Sabha) and Legislative Council (Vidhana Parishat), their membership and functions.
- the nature of the State Executive, the Governor, his qualifications and functions.
- the nomination of the Chief Minister and his functions.
- the functions of the various levels of subordinate courts.
- the nature and responsibilities of the Lok Adalats.

The Union of India comprises 28 States and 6 Union Territories. The State Governments follow the model of the Central Government and thus have the Legislature, Executive and Judiciary. The State Government has the power to frame laws on subjects under the State List and implement them. Some States have two Houses like the Parliament, whereas some states have only the Lower House (Legislative Assembly).

Do you know this?

The States of Karnataka, Uttar Pradesh, Andhra Pradesh have two Houses whereas the States of Tamil Nadu, West Bengal, Assam, Arunachal Pradesh and some others have only one House.

STATE LEGISLATURE

The State Legislature (Vidhana Mandala) is composed of the Governor and the two Houses. The Upper House is called Legislative Council (Vidhana Parishat) and the Lower House is called Legislative Assembly (Vidhana Sabha). The Legislative Assembly has representatives of the people whereas the Legislative Council has experts from various fields.

Vidhana Sabha

The strength of the Vidhana Sabha depends on the population of the State. The strength of the Vidhana Parishat is $\frac{1}{3}$ of the members

of the Vidhana Sabha. The maximum number of seats of any Vidhana Sabha should not exceed 500 or be below 60. However, the number of seats in small States is less. Ex. In Mizoram and Goa, there are 40 members each. The Vidhana Sabha in Karnataka has 225 members. 224 members are elected whereas one Anglo-Indian is nominated by the Governor.



Vidhana Soudha

Qualifications for a Legislative Assembly member:

1. Should be a citizen of India.
2. Should have completed 25 years of age.
3. Should not be employed in any office of profit of the Government.
4. Should not have been punished by any court.
5. Should not be of unsound mind.
6. Should not be an insolvent.
7. Should possess the qualifications as decided by the Parliament from time to time.

Term of office : The members of the Legislative Assembly (Vidhana Sabha) are elected for a term of 5 years. However, the Assembly may be dissolved before the expiry of the full term on the recommendation of the Cabinet. At that time, the State will be under President's rule. If the Members do not intend to continue in the Assembly, they should submit their resignation to the Speaker.

Activity :

Meet your MLA and discuss the functions of MLA.

The Speaker and the Deputy Speaker are elected from among the elected Members of the Assembly. The proceedings of the House are carried on under the chairmanship of the Speaker. He has the functions of maintaining the peace, dignity and decorum of the House, summoning and postponing the meetings, safeguarding the rights of the Members, and casting the decisive vote when bills receive equal number of votes supporting and opposing them.

Activity :

Visit the Legislative Assembly at the time of session and List out the points about their discussion

Powers and functions of the Legislative Assembly :

Legislative powers : The Legislative Assembly has the power to frame laws relating to the subjects mentioned in the State List and the Concurrent List. The Bills have to be passed by both the Houses before they are sent to the Governor for his signature. The Governor may send certain Bills to the President for his approval.

Financial powers : The Legislative Assembly has greater powers than the Legislative Council in the matter of finance. The Finance Bill has to be first presented in the Legislative Assembly, and only then in the Legislative Council. Though the Legislative Council does not have the power to reject any Bill, it can delay it for 14 days.

Administrative powers: The State Executive is responsible to the Legislative Assembly, and can be in power only as long as it enjoys the trust of the Legislative Assembly. Each Member of the Council of Ministers is individually accountable, and the whole Council of Ministers is accountable to the Legislative Assembly.

Electoral powers : The elected members of the Legislative Assembly has the power to elect the President, Members of the Rajya Sabha and Legislative Council, Speaker and Deputy Speaker of the Assembly.

Other powers : The Members of the Legislative Assembly discuss bills passed by the Parliament when the need arises. The reports of the State Public Service Commission and other reports are discussed in the Legislative Assembly.

Legislative Council (Vidhana Parishat)

The Upper House of the State Legislature is called the Legislative Council. The strength of this House is $\frac{1}{3}$ of that of the Legislative Assembly of the State. However, it should not be less than 40. This is the reason why some states do not have a Legislative Council. The number of members of the Karnataka Legislative Council is 75. These members represent 5 fields. Some are elected from among the Members of the Legislative Assembly, Local Bodies, Graduates' Constituencies, Teacher's Constituencies. The Governor nominates some Members who are experts in the fields of art, literature, education, social service, science etc. The Legislative Council is a permanent body. Every two years, members who have completed their term retire.

Qualifications of the M.L.C.s

1. Should be a citizen of India.
2. Should have completed 30 years of age.
3. Should possess all qualifications as required for an M.L.A.

The term of office of the nominated Members is 6 years. Every two years $\frac{1}{3}$ of the Members of the Legislative Council retire. The Speaker and the Deputy Speaker are chosen from among the Members. The Speaker assumes Chairmanship during the proceedings of the House and ensures dignity and decorum of the House.

Powers of the Legislative Council

Legislative powers : All bills may be presented in both the Houses, except money bills which are presented first only in Legislative Assembly. After the bill is approved by one House, it is sent to the

other House. The Legislative Council can withhold a bill for 3 months. However, when the same bill is sent by the Legislative Assembly for the second time, the Council should approve it within one month. If it doesn't do so, it will be understood that both the Houses have approved the bill and it will be sent to the Governor for his assent.

Financial powers : The Legislative Assembly has greater powers over finance than the Legislative Council which can only withhold a finance bill for 14 days. If it does not return the bill after 14 days, it is understood that both the Houses have approved the bill and it is sent to the Governor for his assent.

Administrative powers: The Legislative Council does not have much control over administration. It can obtain information by Members posing questions to Ministers. If the questions are not answered properly, it can only insist on the Minister's resignation but cannot move a No Confidence motion.

Discretion powers : The Legislative Council carries on debates about the Government's programmes, policies, decisions and Acts. As this is the House of Elders' House, the debates are carried on in a very serious manner.

Activity :

List out the names of the members of your area to parliament & Assembly.

STATE EXECUTIVE

The State Executive comprises the Governor, Chief Minister and the Council of Ministers (the Cabinet). Though the Governor is the Constitutional Head, the Council of Ministers with the Chief Minister as its Head is the real executive authority. The Governor can exercise his authority either directly or through his appointed officials.

GOVERNOR

The President nominates the Governor on the recommendation of the Prime Minister and his Cabinet. Every State is required to have a Governor. However, sometimes two or three States can have a single Governor.

Qualifications, Term of Office, Salary and Perquisites: (1) Should be a citizen of India. (2) Should not be less than 35 years of age. (3) Should not hold any office of profit under the Government. (4) Should not be a Member of either Parliament or State Legislature. If he is a Member of either, he should resign from that post when he is appointed as the Governor.

The term of office of the Governor is 5 years. However, he continues to occupy the post even after the completion of this term till a successor is appointed. The President may recall the Governor on the recommendation of the Union Council of Ministers before the expiry of his term. The Governor receives salary and allowances as fixed by the Parliament, and resides at the official residence (Raj Bhavan). His actions cannot be questioned nor can he be prosecuted in a court of law.

Powers and functions : Legally all executive powers belong to the Governor. However, the Chief Minister and his Council of Ministers exercise these powers are:

Executive powers : The Governor is the Executive Head and appoints the Chief Minister and the other Ministers on the advice of the Chief Minister. He also appoints the Chairman of the State Public Service Commission, the Vice-Chancellors for all the Universities in the State and other officials.

Legislative powers : The Governor has the power to summon, postpone or dissolve the Assembly on the advice of the Chief Minister. He also has the power to nominate one person to the Assembly and $\frac{1}{6}$ of the members to the Legislative Council. He may approve or withhold a bill approved by the Legislature.

Discuss

State Government orders are issued in the name of Governor and at the centre the name of president of India. Why ?

Financial powers : The Finance Bill cannot be presented in the Legislative Assembly without the permission of the Governor. The Governor has the power to appoint the State Finance Commission and Planning Commission. The State Emergency Fund is in his name

and funds are taken out from it to deal with emergency situations like drought, floods, earthquake etc.

Judicial powers : The Governor has the power to pardon those who have been convicted and reduce, postpone or change the punishment given to criminals. He appoints the State Advocate General and District Judges.

Discretionary powers: The Governor uses his discretionary powers while appointing the Chief Minister of the State. He may also withhold the bill passed by the legislature and send it to the President, recommend to the President to declare emergency in the State, dismiss the Cabinet or dissolve the Legislative Assembly.

State Council of Ministers

Our Constitution provides for a Council of Ministers with the Chief Minister as its Head. This Council assists the Governor in administrative matters, and is responsible to the Legislative Assembly. The Council has many functions:

Activity

List out the chief ministers of Karnataka from beginning to till today.

1. It decides the Government's policies.
2. It prepares the State budget and presents it in the legislature.
3. It advises the Governor in matters of appointment of the Chairman of the State Public Service Commission, its Members, the Lokayukta etc.
4. Each Minister has to ensure efficient working of his Department.
5. It has to co-ordinate and supervise the working of different departments.

Chief Minister : The Chief Minister is the Head of the State Government. Success or failure of the State Government depends on his personal charm. He is the repository of all the power of the State. He is the Head of the Council of Ministers, the Legislature, and the Leader of the majority party in the government. The Chief Minister should be a member of any one of the two Houses. Even

those who are not Members of either House can become the Chief Minister. However, he has to become the Member of any one House within six months.

Functions and Powers of the Chief Minister : Since the Chief Minister is the most important figure in the Government, he has many functions and powers. They are:

1. He prepares the list of Ministers and, after submitting it to the Governor, forms the Government.
2. He allocates Portfolios to the Ministers. He can also change the portfolios allotted to Ministers.
3. He has the power to remove those Ministers who are not loyal to the Government, act against the Council of Ministers or have criminal record.
4. As Head of Government, he plays a very important role in formulation of policies.
5. As Head of the Cabinet, he can summon or postpone its meetings.
6. He has the power to co-ordinate and supervise the working of all Departments.
7. He has the power to dissolve the Legislative Assembly before expiry of its term.
8. He acts as the link between the Governor and the Council of Ministers.
9. He acts as an advisor to the Governor with regard to nominations to many posts.

Subordinate Courts

The Conference of Courts that was held in 1948 urged for independence to subordinate courts. As a result, specifications about the structure and scope of the subordinate courts have been included in the Constitution. Though subordinate courts differ from State to State, their main features remain the same. Courts have been classified into two kinds, namely:

1. Civil Courts
2. Criminal Courts

Civil Court : Every district has a civil court, and the District Judge is its Chief Judge. The Governor appoints the Chief Judge in consultation with the judges of the High Court. The Chief Judge should have served as an advocate in any court of the State for a period of seven years. The other judges are selected through a competitive examination.

Civil courts settle disputes related to civil matters like property, land, monetary transactions, marriage, divorce and others. They also hear appeals from lower courts. The District Judge exercises control over all the civil courts in the district.

These subordinate courts are under the District Court :

1. Court of Subordinate Judges
2. Court of Additional Subordinate Judges
3. Court of Munsiffs
4. Court of Additional Munsiffs

Criminal Court : Criminal courts came into existence on 1 April, 1974. They are also known as District Magistrate courts. They function under the High Court. The highest criminal court at the district level is the Sessions court. The District Judge performs the function of a judge of this court too. The court takes up crimes like murder, robbery, dacoity etc. It has the powers to issue death sentences and also life imprisonment sentences. However, such sentences will have to be ratified by the High Court. Similarly, an appeal may be made to the High Court against the judgements given by the criminal court.

Activity

Visit a civil court and observe the Arguments. Discuss with your teacher.

There are other criminal courts functioning under criminal court:

Chief Magistrate Court: This court does not have the powers to pass death sentences or life imprisonment sentences. However, it can impose seven years' punishment.

First Grade Magistrate Court: This court has greater powers and can impose punishment upto 3 years or fine upto Rs.5000/-, or impose both. Moreover, it can admit appeals against judgments from lower Magisterial courts.

Second Grade Magistrate Court: This court has the power to impose punishment upto 2 years or a fine of Rs.1000/- or both.

Third Grade Magistrate Court: This court has the power only to impose one month's imprisonment or fine of Rs.50/- or both. Neither the Second Class nor the Third Class Magisterial Courts can admit appeals against judgments of any other court.

Thus, both the District and the Sessions courts are one and the same, with the same Judge passing judgments in both. When the court takes up a civil matter, it is called District Court, and when it takes up a criminal matter, it is called Sessions Court.

Revenue Courts : There are Revenue courts in every district. They take up cases related to land tax, land records etc. Revenue Courts comprise the following courts:

Tahasildar Court : The Tahasildar Court is the lowest court among the Revenue courts and the Tahasildar is its judge. This court is also known as Taluk Magistrate Court.

District Subdivisional Officer's Court: The Assistant Commissioner is the judge in this court. This court takes up appeals against the decisions and judgments of Tahsildar courts.

District Land Tax Court or District Magistrate Court: Existing in every district, this court takes up appeals against the judgments given by the Tahsildar court or the District Subdivisional Officer's court. The Deputy Commissioner is its judge.

Commissioner's Court: This court takes up appeals against the judgments of the district magistrate courts. The Divisional Officer is its judge.

Do you know this?

Karnataka has been divided into four divisions for administrative convenience : 1. Bengaluru 2. Mysuru 3. Kalaburagi 4. Belagavi

Land Tax Board: This is the highest court dealing with land tax cases. It has the power to take up appeals against the judgments of the lower land tax courts. The Land Tax Secretary is its Head, and the court functions under the supervision of the High Court.

People's Courts (Lok Adalat)

In India, the legal procedure is time-consuming and expensive. As an alternative, the Government has set up other forms of legal institutions which function faster and are less expensive. These institutions came into existence in 1985. One of them is Lok Adalat. It takes up cases from parties which mutually agree to settle the cases amicably.

Lok Adalats are established only in some states like Gujarat, New Delhi, Karnataka and a few others. Some judges of the Supreme Courts, social workers and young law graduates are the founding members of these courts. Cases which have not yet been disposed off by the other courts or the High Court can be settled by the Lok Adalats. The functioning of the Lok Adalats has drawn appreciation from people, mainly due to three features :

1. It lays stress on compromise.
2. It is fast and cheap.
3. It reduces the judicial burden on other courts.

Lok Adalats take up cases relating to vehicle accidents, land possession, banking, marriage and alimony, labourers' problems etc. These courts are established by either the District Law Authority or the Taluk Law Authority. There are two mediators in it, one in government service and the other a social volunteer.

The judgements given by the Lok Adalats are final and binding on both the parties, and appeals cannot be filed against them. These judgements enjoy the same respect that judgements of civil courts do.

EXERCISES

I. Fill in the blanks with suitable words.

1. The Union of India comprises _____ States and _____ Union Territories.
2. The _____ nominates one Anglo-Indian to the State Legislative Assembly.
3. The Karnataka Legislative Council comprises _____ members.
4. The State Cabinet, comprising the _____ and the _____ is the real Executive.
5. The Governor is appointed by the _____.
6. The State Advocate General is appointed by the _____.
7. Criminal courts came into existence on _____.
8. The lowest land tax court is the _____.

II. Answer the following questions with group discussion.

1. Explain the structure of the Legislative Assembly.
2. Which fields are represented by the members of the Legislative Council?
3. What are the qualifications, and the term of office of the Governor.

4. Write a short note on the Chief Minister.
5. Which are the subordinate courts under the Civil Courts?
6. What was the purpose of establishing Lok Adalats? When did they come into existence?

III. Activity.

1. Visit the Karnataka Legislative Assembly and Legislative Council and record the proceedings.
2. Like the State Assembly, form the School parliament and observe the proceedings and make the Report.
3. Visit the subordinate courts in your area. Watch what happens there. Prepare a brief report on your experience.
4. List out the states of India which have Bicameral legislature of which have unicameral legislature.

IV. Project Work.

1. Discuss the Assembly proceedings with the M.L.A. of your constituency.
2. Prepare an album of the photographs of Karnataka Chief Ministers till now.

DEFENCE OF THE NATION

We learn about the following in this chapter,

- the different units of the defence system and their responsibilities;
- the posts and the heads of the different units of the military;
- the contribution of the military to the security of the nation;
- the secondary defence system, apart from the military.

As you have already known, our country was under imperial rule of foreigners and only after many protests, struggles and sacrifices we got our independence on 15th August 1947. Hence it is our bounded duty to ensure that our nation does not ever come under external aggression. Our armed forces are to be prepared in such a manner that they are able to safeguard the sovereignty of the nation at all times.

India has nearly 15,200 km of land border and about 7,516.50 km of sea border to protect. We have border relationships with Pakistan, China, Bhutan, Nepal, Bangladesh, Myanmar and Sri Lanka. Though we desire to live in peace, our neighbouring nations do not permit us to do so. Although India has made sincere efforts to solve all problems in an amicable manner through peace talks, our efforts have not met with success. It is for these reasons that the role of our defence forces assumes great significance.

Organisation of the Defence Forces : The Indian Defence system consists of three wings – Army, Navy and Air Force. The President is the Commander-in-chief of all the three divisions. The Chief of the army is known as General, the chief of the Naval Force is called Admiral and that of the Air Force is called Air Chief Marshal. In 2001, Chief of Integrated Defence Staff (CIDS) was appointed for better management of the three services. The Indian Defence Minister co-ordinates the work of the three forces. Each force has its own training centers.

The headquarters of the Defence Ministry is in New Delhi. This Ministry has four sections : 1. Defence Section 2. Defence Production Section 3. Defence Research and Development Section 4. Retired Defence Personnel Welfare Section.

Indian Army

The headquarters of the Indian Army is in New Delhi. Its head is known as the Commander – in – Chief. He has a Deputy Commander-in-chief, General, Major General, Brigadier, Military Secretary and a Military Engineer to assist him in his work. The army consists of Infantry, Cavalry, Tank Regiments called the Armed Corps and the Gunners' Regiment. There is a Supply and Engineering branch too. The Indian Army has been divided into seven commands for administrative convenience. Their names and headquarters are as given below :

1. Western Command – Chandimandir (Chandigarh)
2. Eastern Command – Kolkata (West Bengal)
3. Norther Command – Udhampur (Kashmir)
4. Southern Command – Pune (Maharashtra)
5. Central Command – Lucknow (Uttar Pradesh)
6. Training Command – Mhow (Madhya Pradesh)
7. North-Western Command – Jaipur (Rajasthan)



Land Army

Each command is under the charge of a general officer (commander-in-chief) of the rank of a Lt.General. These army

commands are divided into Areas and Sub-areas which are headed by Major General and Brigadier respectively. The important training centers are the National Defence Academy in Khadakvasla near Pune, the Defence Personnel College in Wellington near Ooty, the National Defence College in New Delhi, the Indian Military Academy in Dehradun and the Officers' Training School in Chennai.

The main responsibility of the army is to protect the land and its sovereignty against attacks by foreign nations. Defence has a great influence on our geographical, political, social and technical environments. It also plays an important role in guarding the border areas and in tackling natural calamities.

Indian Navy

India has one of the world's longest coastline. We require a strong Naval force to protect the islands of Andaman-Nicobar and the Lakshadweep together with the coast of the mainland. The headquarters of the Navy is also in New Delhi. Its head is The Admiral, under him there are various officers like, Vice-Admiral, Rear Admiral, Commander, Captain, Lieutenant Commander, Lieutenant and Sub-lieutenant.



Naval Force

Our Navy has been organized into three Naval commands which are: 1. Western Naval command (Mumbai) 2. Eastern Naval command (Vishakapatnam) 3. Southern Command (Cochin). The navy has two fleets – the Western Fleet and the Eastern Fleet. Indian Navy is huge and to expand it further, Hindustan Ship Yard has been established at Vishakapatna. Besides, ship building work also goes

on in Kolkata and Goa. Ships, submarines and small boats are also built in these ship yards.

Various frigates, i.e., warships like INS Neelagiri, Himagiri, Devagiri, Taragiri, Vindhyagiri, Chakradhari (a recent addition in March 2012) and INS Godavari, survey ships and Coastguard forces have been constructed. Recently INS Vibhuti, a warship equipped with rockets, was constructed. Due to all these developments, India is considered the 6th nation to possess ultra-modern warships.

Indian Navy has two training centres, one in Kerala INS Vanduvarti and the other in Maharashtra, INS Shivaji at Lonavala.

Indian Air Force

The Indian Air Force is a modern unit, well-equipped with technologically advanced aircraft. It has good defence equipment, well-developed communication network, latest spying technology, capability to confront the enemy and defend the nation. It also has sufficient number of warplanes, helicopters and assault aircraft.



Indian Air Force

The Indian Air Force works effectively and courageously both during war times and peace times. It has succeeded in ensuring safety, security and stability. The headquarters of the Air Force is in New Delhi. The head of the Airforce is Air Chief Marshall. It is organized into five Operational Commands and 2 Functional Commands. They are as follows :

Operational Commands

1. Western Command – New Delhi
2. Eastern Command – Shillong (Meghalaya)
3. Central Command – Allahabad (Uttar Pradesh)
4. North Western Command – Gandhinagar (Gujarat)
5. Southern Command – Thiruvananthapuram (Kerala)

Functional Commands

1. Training Command – Bangalore (Karnataka)
2. Maintenance Command – Nagpur (Maharashtra)

Two important centers imparting training to the Air Force are Bangalore and Hyderabad. Those who have been selected to the Air Force are given training in flying at the Special Training Center in Dundighat. Similarly, administrative and technical training centers are at Bangalore and Coimbatore. Today our Air Force has more than one thousand airplanes and helicopters. The main types of aircraft are Canberra, Hunter, Ajeet, MiG 21, MiG 23, MiG 25, MiG 27, MiG 29, Mirage 2000 etc.

Do you know this ?

The various cadres of the 3 Armed Forces

1. Army	2. Navy	3. Air Force
a. General	a. Admiral	a. Air Chief Marshal
b. Lieutenant General	b. Vice Admiral	b. Air Marshal
c. Major General	c. Rear Admiral	c. Air Vice Marshal
d. Brigadier	d. Commodore	d. Air Commodore
e. Colonel	e. Captain	e. Group Captain
f. Lieutenant Colonel	f. Commander	f. Wing Commander
g. Major	g. Lieutenant Commander	g. Squadron Leader
h. Captain	h. Lieutenant	h. Flight Lieutenant
i. Lieutenant	i. Sub-lieutenant	i. Flying Officer

Recruitment to the Army: Those who desire to work in the Armed forces should be service-oriented, patriotic, ready to sacrifice their lives for the sake of the country and also be familiar with the multi-cultural fabric of the nation. Any citizen of the country, irrespective of his religion, caste, class or community can join the military. However, there are certain conditions with regard to physical requirements, mental health, general education and technical knowledge that have to be met.

When recruitments are made to the lower posts of the army, they are made according to the percentage of recruitable male population (RMP) of the State and Union Territories. Suitable candidates are recruited to the Air Force through selection and registration on an All-India basis. This is done by the Central Airmen Selection Board (CASB). Recruitment of sailors to the Navy takes place through the Naval Recruitment Organisation (NRO). Responsibility for this task lies with the Human Resource Project and the Directorate at the headquarters of the Navy. Recruitment of women to the three armed forces takes place through the Women Special Entry Scheme (WSES).

Defence producting : The activities of the Defence production are divided into two: 1. The manufacturing units run by the Department, and 2. The manufacturing units run by the Public Defence Sector. The factories of the first kind manufacture gun powder, weapons, tanks etc. whereas the factories in the public sector manufacture ships, aircraft, bulldozers, submarines, rockets etc.

Do you know this?

Public Sector Industries

HAL - Hindustan Aeronautics Ltd. - 1964;

BEL - Bharath Electronics Ltd. - 1954;

BEML - Bharath Earth Movers Ltd. - 1964, and

BDL - Bharath Dynamics Ltd. - 1970.

Our Defence- Preparedness and Research and Development: Today our defence forces have to face many challenges. Ex: Terrorism, Naxal attacks etc. Hence our soldiers are prepared to guard our borders all the time. Our army is the fourth largest in the world, our air force the fifth largest and our navy too the fifth largest.

Seabird Naval base has been opened at Karwar in Karnataka to strength our navy. In addition, the DRDO (Defence Research and Development Organisation) which was established in 1958, has developed advanced earth- to- earth rockets like Pruthvi, Trishul, Akash, Nag, Agni 1, 2, 3, 4 and 5 (On 19th April 2012 Agni 5 was sent with a rocket which could cover 5 thousand kilometers). With submarines and antisubmarines, India has joined the ranks of elite countries like America, Russia, Britain, France and others.

Bofors guns were used effectively in the Kargil war between India and Pakistan. The Pokhran experiment has enabled India to develop technology which provides us ability to face even nuclear attacks. In addition, 55 Defence Laboratories have been established in different parts of the country. Therefore, like our Armed Forces, even we should be prepared to lay down our lives for the sake of our country.

Do you know this ?

Kargil War - 1999 : *The Kargil war was fought between India and Pakistan during May-June 1999. On May 16, Pak terrorists mounted an aerial attack on the highest area of Kashmir. In relation to this, India started 'Operation Vijay' and attacked Pakistan. The Indian Army faced a setback initially. Later, it reinforced its attack through the use of Bofors Guns and on 14th June, Pakistan retreated shamefully. Though this was a minor war, it drew the attention of the whole world. All countries condemned Pakistan as an 'Aggressive Nation' for having attacked a peace-loving country like India. This war aroused a sense of nationalism in Indians.*

Around 30,000 Indian soldiers had taken part in this war. It was estimated that 5000 Pakistani soldiers had taken part. The Indian Air Force boosted the Indian Army through 'operation saved sagar.' In the last week of July. The Indian Army began its final attack. The war ended on 26th July. The day India defeated Pakistan is celebrated as 'Kargil Vijay Divas' (or 'Kargil Victory Day') in India. Every year this is celebrated on July 26th.

Second line of defence

Besides the Armed Forces, there are other organizations which form a second line of defence. They are:

- | | |
|---------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. Territorial Army | 2. N.C.C. – National Cadet Corps |
| 3. Coastal Guard | 4. Border Security Force |

Territorial Army : It is a voluntary part-time force. Its services are used only during emergencies like natural calamities. It was established by a Parliament Act in 1949. It has no professional soldiers, but only civilians who are eager to play a role in defence and are given military training in their spare time. Only a person who is gainfully employed and in the age group of 18 to 42 is eligible to join the force. Every year, the third Saturday of November is celebrated as 'Territorial Army Day'.

National Cadet Corps: N.C.C. is mainly a youth organisation of the country. It was established in 1948. School and college-going students can voluntarily join this organisation. Its aim is to develop among the students a sense of discipline, leadership qualities, friendliness and service-mindedness. It is a body of disciplined and trained youth force which comes to the rescue of the nation during emergencies.

There are two units in N.C.C. –the senior unit at college level and the junior unit at school level. These cadets are given various concessions :

1. Those who have received N.C.C. training can join the armed forces easily.
2. Cadets who have earned distinction during training are given seats in professional colleges.
3. Cadets are given training in handling weapons.
4. During training, cadets go on adventures like hiking, trekking, gliding, scaling or mountaineering, sailing etc.
5. Students who have received N.C.C. training can secure admission in any defence school.



Coastal Guard : It is a para-military force. It is very important among the secondary defence forces. It was formed in 1978. It protects the interests of the nation with regard to its waters. It guards the coastline of 7516.5 km. area. The ships of the Coastal Guard have

Activity

Join N.C.C.,
Scouts in your school
and get more
information about
them.

been given names like Puthar, Vikram, Vijay, Veera etc. They prevent smuggling and illegal sea trade. Its headquarters is in New Delhi and is headed by a Director General. It has four regional headquarters at Mumbai, Chennai, Gandhinagar and Port Blair in Andaman and Nicobar islands.

Border Security Force : Border Security Force was established in 1965. Its soldiers vigilantly keep watch over our borders which stretch upto 15200 kms. Its training center is in Yelahanka in Bangalore. BSF has successfully prevented transgression of our borders and illegal entry of foreigners and smuggling. During threats to internal security, soldiers from Assam Rifles, Indo-Tibetan Border Police (ITBP), Central Reserve Police Force (CRPF), National Security Guards (NSG – to tackle terrorism), Central Industrial Security Force (CISF), Railway Protection Force (RPF) assist the BSF.

Civil Defence : The main aim of this force is protection of life of the citizens. It also strives to reduce the damage to property and malpractices with regard to industrial products. It is a voluntary organisation. The activities of this citizens' forum are restricted to 22 sections or cities. At present, there are 13 lakh consumer protection volunteers of whom 6.64 lakhs have been trained.

Home Guards : Home Guards is a voluntary force. It was established first in 1946. It is of great help to the local police in curbing communal clashes, restoring peace in society and during elections. This force can be found in some States and Union Territories. During the Indo-China war in 1962, volunteers from the Home Guards wore uniforms and fought along with the Indian soldiers. There are nearly 5,73,793 Home Guards volunteers in India.

Red Cross : Red Cross Society is both a national and an international organization. In 1920 Indian parliament passed the bill and established this organisation.

The Indian Red Cross is a humanitarian voluntary organization and has nearly 700 branches accross State and Union Territories. Its headquarters are in New Delhi. The Indian President is its Chairman and Governer in the state branch. A Secretary General is its Administrative Officer. It has an administrative body consisting of 19 members and a Secretary. The President nominates 6 members whereas the remaining 12 members are elected from the State and Union Territories. The Red Cross Society renders valuable service to people during natural calamities and other emergencies. Without any discrimination, it helps sick people and those wounded on the battle-field. This organization believes in 7 fundamental principles: 1) Humanity 2) Impartiality 3) Neutrality 4) Independence 5) Voluntary work 6) Oneness 7) Internationalism.

Our nation is well-protected by our three Armed Forces and the secondary defence forces. It is in gratitude for their sacrifice, courage, and great achievement that they are honoured with awards like Param Vir Chakra, Vishisth Vir Chakra, Vir Chakra etc. These awards are equivalent to the Ashoka Chakra given during peace times to citizens.

The Armed Forces and International Peace: Our Armed Forces have earned respect for not only serving our country well but also engaging themselves in establishing peace in foreign countries. Our soldiers have worked under the supervision of the United Nations in countries like Gaza, Korea, Congo, Sri Lanka and others. It was with the help of our soldiers that Bangladesh could become an independent country.

In this way, our Armed Forces are working for our country both during war-times and peace-times. They are also rendering invaluable service during natural calamities like floods, droughts, earthquakes, landslides, storms etc.

EXERCISES

I. Fill in the blanks with suitable words.

1. The main objective of our defence policy is protecting _____.
2. The Commander-in-Chief of our three Armed Forces is _____.
3. The Chief of the Army is called _____.

4. The headquarters of the Defence Ministry is in _____.
5. The Hindustan Ship-building yard is at _____.
6. The border security force training centre is in _____.
7. The Indian Red Cross Society established in _____.

II. Answer the following questions after group discussion.

1. What is the Naval Base near Karwar known as?
2. Which are the four divisions of our Defence Ministry?
3. Explain the structure of the Indian Army.
4. Which are the Commands of the Army?
5. Explain the functions of the Indian Air Force.
6. What are the qualifications required for recruitment to the Army?
7. What are the aims of N.C.C.? What are its advantages?
8. Explain the organization of the Indian Red Cross Society.

III. Activity.

1. Have a discussion on the defence system in your school.
2. Visit a branch of the Red Cross Society in your town and get to know their activities. Prepare a report.
3. Invite a retired Military soldier and share experiences with him.

IV. Project Work.

1. Collect pictures of our armed forces and display in your school.
2. Start a branch of the Red Cross Society in your school and help the needy.
3. Collect pictures of rockets and warships.

NATIONAL INTEGRATION

We learn about the following in this chapter,

- meaning of Nationalism.
- the factors which enable unity in diversity in our country.
- the factors which enable National Integration.
- the obstacles to national integration

Nationalism : The word nationalism is by nation. In the opinion of modern scholars the deciding factors of nationalism are - people know their land as motherland, brotherhood of those people and equal participation at all the times in the nation. This type of people and their emotion is nationalism.



From the long time Indian people are having the nationalism. This nationalism was the motivation to the fight against foreigners rule. Nationalism is the basic spirit for fought against British.

National Integration : National integration refers to that situation where all the people of the country feel they are one although there are differences with regard to race, religion, culture and language. Such a feeling of unity among the people is necessary to build a strong nation.

India is a vast nation, ranking second in the world with regard to population. Nearly 1652 languages and dialects are spoken by the people of this country. Among these, 22 languages have been given official language status by our Constitution. There are many facilities provided to every citizen to learn his mother tongue in the area he resides. One unique feature of our nation is the freedom citizens enjoy to practise the religion they desire (ex:Hinduism, Islam, Christianity, Buddhism, Jainism, Sikhism and Zorostranism). Similarly, citizens have the freedom to dress, eat and interact with each other in the way they want. Further, though there is geographical and natural diversity, politically we are all united and follow the same Constitution.

Unity in Diversity: In spite of all differences in various aspects, India stands on a foundation of unity. Beneath all geographical, social, linguistic, cultural, political, religious and racial variations are hidden certain common aspects of the Indian lifestyle. Uniform administrative system, efficient communication tools and modern education system have enabled Indians to nurture a feeling of oneness.

Factors which enable unity in diversity:

Geographical unity: The Himalayan Mountain Range, the Bay of Bengal, the Indian Ocean and the Arabian Sea have cut India off from the rest of the world and made us feel one naturally. Further, the chanting of the national anthems by all Indians enable us to achieve solidarity.

Political unity : The Indian States which became one under the British rule, function even today under the same common Constitution, uniform law, similar educational system, uniform judicial system, and a strong Central Government. These factors have enabled them to enjoy a sense of unity.

Religious unity : People of different religions like Hinduism, Buddhism, Jainism, Sikhism, Islam and Zorostranism practice their religion without any fear, and also respect one another's religion. This has also contributed to the feeling of oneness.

Linguistic unity : India is a land of many languages. Samskrit is the origin to many languages. Every State has its own language and literature. People of one language respect people speaking other languages. This factor too aid in fostering unity.

Cultural unity : Though there are different religions and people of different areas practise their own customs, traditions, have their own style of dressing, cooking and living, there is harmony among people of India.

Thus, amidst diversity there is unity among Indians. The feeling of 'We are all one' is deep-rooted in the mind of every Indian. Indians promoting national integration.

Factors promoting national integration

1. Secularism : India is a secular country. It is not against any religion. This means that every citizen enjoys the freedom to practice the religion he desires. India has not declared any religion as the national religion, but treats every religion as equal. This factor contributes to national integration.

2. Democracy : India is a democratic nation and all citizens are equal before the law. As has been explained before, the Fundamental Rights and the Directive Principles of State Policy emphasise that all are equal. There can be no discrimination among people on the basis of religion, caste, language or culture. The fact that this rule has been enshrined in the Constitution makes our country an integrated one.

3. National Festivals : National festivals like Independence Day, Republic Day, Gandhi Jayanti etc. bring people together during their celebrations. All Indians celebrate these festivals regardless of their religion, language and culture.

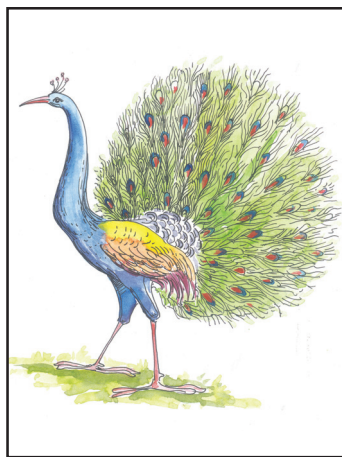
4. Our National Symbols : Our national symbols or emblems like the National Anthem, National Flag, National Animal National Bird. National flower etc. enable us to identify ourselves as belonging to one nation. During times of emergency or threat to the country, these symbols unite the people and build solidarity among them.

5. Interdependence : The Central and the State Governments work together to achieve common goals of the nation. Produce grown in one part of the country helps in its economic development when that produce is sold in another part of the country. Ex: the wheat that is grown in Punjab is sold in Tamil Nadu. Cotton grown in Gujarat is marketed in Bihar. This shows that no part of the country can find development without depending on other parts of the country. This fact proves that all of us belong to one nation.

Apart from the above-mentioned factors, communication



National Symbol



National Bird - Peacock



National Flower - Lotus



National Animal - Tiger

methods, mass media, natural features contribute to a feeling of oneness although there is a variety of cultures, regionalism, different religions and languages in our country.

Problems hindering National Integration

1. When people belonging to different castes and religions form their own associations, and indulge in activities which encourage their castes and religions national integration is threatened.
2. The variety of languages in India is leading to linguistic obsession and parochialism
3. The presence of innumerable castes and caste-based associations is leading to communalism.
4. Parochialism and regionalism are posing threats to national unity.
5. Border disputes, river water disputes and language disputes between states are also problematic for national integration.

Activity :

Write a note on improving the national integration in your school through different programmes.

Apart from the above factors, terrorism, untouchability, lack of political will, negligence of people are also obstacles to national integration. As explained above, it is only when people of one religion or caste respect those belonging to others, support them and celebrate all festivals

together that national integration can be fostered. The educational policy of the country should be re-framed. Better vocational education should be provided. Discontinuation of studies by children should be prevented. In these ways, we, the responsible citizens of India, should respect one another, and together enjoy a sense of solidarity. Only then will there be a true sense of unity in the country.

EXERCISES

I. Fill in the blanks with suitable words.

1. India is a secular country and so does not oppose any _____.
2. Communalism is a major obstacle to _____.
3. Republic Day is a _____ festival.
4. India considered _____ languages as National languages.
5. Our National Animal is _____.

II. Answer the following questions after group discussion.

1. What is meant by 'nationalism'?
2. What do you mean by 'National Integration'?
3. Which are the factors that lead to unity in diversity?
4. Which are the factors that promoting national integration?
5. What are the suggestions hindring the National intergration?

III. Activity.

1. Draw pictures illustrating unity in diversity and display in your school.
2. Collect information about the manner in which festivals are celebrated among people of different religion in your area and write about them.

IV. Project Work :

1. Collect photographs that promote national integration.
2. Collect religious texts which encourage national unity.

SOCIOLOGY

CHAPTER – 1

FAMILY

We learn about the following in this chapter,

- Meaning of 'family'
- relationships among the members of the family
- stages in the development of the individual

Family

The word 'family' has its origin in the Latin word 'famulus'. This is an ancient traditional arrangement. The system of relationships between the parents is called the family. Family is a unit of society. It is like a living cell. The community develops from a family, leading to the creation of a nation.

A family rests on the support of emotional pillars. The mother's love, the father's affection, the understanding between the husband and wife, the desire to get children and nurture them act as the pillars supporting the family.

In the contemporary Indian family, the parents discuss with their children before taking decisions. Whether it is a matter of purchasing some material, giving a gift or matter related to discipline in children, or income and expenditure of the family, the mother's role is important. The mother enjoys equal rights when responsible decisions have to be taken.

Features of a family

Family is a universal system. It is a social system seen in all ages and all countries. It is the core of all systems of the society. It is from the family that neighbourhoods, villages, cities and nations have evolved. Right from their childhood, the members of the family not only realise their social responsibilities but also understand the need for co-operation. The social traditions, morality and behavior are all controlled by the family. The family can be called a universal, permanent and traditional structure.

Mother-father, husband-wife and children : Since marriage is a universal phenomenon, accepted at all times, it has become a sacred social institution. It creates mutual rights and responsibilities between father-mother, husband-wife and children. According to the Indian tradition, maintaining and protecting the wife and children is the responsibility and duty of the husband. Rearing children and educating them are the duties of the parents. In India, it is an important duty of the children to look after the old parents and protect them.

Childhood and youth : Childhood and youth occupy an important place in the social development of an individual. Not only does the child learn the mother tongue but also the fundamental social matters. A child growing in a familial and social atmosphere develops related characteristics and gains friendly relations with other children of the same age. By mingling with others, it develops leadership qualities, social behavior, its requirements and restrictions influence a child resulting in the formation of healthy social relationships. Later in youth, it leads to friendship, independence, security and social acceptance. The behaviour and habits developed in the youth continue in the adult and old ages.

Families and generations : The unit of family rests on the support of many several generations. It has many blood relatives belonging to different generations. This phenomenon is seen in all societies. Grandparents belong to the first generation, parents to the second and children to the third generation. Based on the members of different generations present in a family, families are classified as mentioned below :

- I. Family consisting of parents and children. This is called Nuclear or Divided family (minimum two generations)
- II. A family consisting of father-mother, children and grandchildren is called a Joint or Undivided family (minimum 3 to 4 generations).

Types of families :

Families are classified based on different principles. Based on authority, a family can be classified as Patriarchal or Matriarchal. Based on marriage, it can be classified as Monogamy, Bigamy or

Polygamy. Based on size, it can be classified as Undivided or Divided family.

1. Patriarchal family : A family in which the father is the head and has all assets in his name is called a Patriarchal family. This type of family system was prevalent in ancient India, China, Rome, Egypt and other countries and is in existence even today.

2. Matriarchal family : A family in which the mother is the head having all property and assets in her name is called Matriarchal family. The Nair community in Calicut in Kerala state and tribal communities in the north-eastern states of India have this system.

3. Modern nuclear family : Based on the structure of the family and the number of generations present in it, a family is classified as either Divided or Undivided family. A family having husband, wife and their unmarried children is called a modern nuclear family. This type is also called Primary family, Individual family or Divided family. This familial system is prevalent in the present society. Privacy, personal happiness, self-contentment, property rights, changing social values, geographical and social structure, advances in science and technology, industrialisation, urbanisation, principles of democracy and equality, decline of religious faith and thinking, spread of materialistic attitude, freedom of women have become responsible for the increase in the number of this type of family.

The main features seen in the modern family are :

1. Modernity
2. Complexity
3. Small size
4. Loose social control
5. Enhanced freedom of members

Undivided family

In an undivided family, there will be people of more than two generations consisting of parents, their children, grandchildren and great-grandchildren. Normally it is a group of people living under one roof, eating food prepared in one kitchen, having equal rights to the property, engaging in same type of worship and having specific blood relatives.

Do this yourself :

Trace your older generations from the time of your great-grandfather till today, and with the help of your elders, draw a family tree.



Undivided family

Features of an undivided family:

Large size : Blood relatives live permanently in the same house. The size of the family is big.

Property : All the members of the family are owners of the property. Utilisation of the property is done in a harmonious manner. An undivided family runs on the basis of interpersonal co-operation of all the members. Its head acts as a religious head. It is only with the permission of all the members that any sale or transfer of property is done.

Residence : All the members of the family normally live under the same roof. Even when one son has a family of his own with a wife and children, he continues the earlier relationship with the core family. The new family is considered a part of the undivided family.

Activity :

Talk to your father and learn about the number of members (male-female) in the undivided family of your grandfather. Also get to know the duties and responsibilities of your grandfather.

Activity :

List out the values of undivided families.

Kitchen : The members of an undivided family usually prepare the food in the same kitchen and consume it together.

Religion : Normally all the members of an undivided family follow the same religion. They worship the same gods. Rites and rituals, daily worship form a part of the daily routine of such families.

Self-indepent : An undivided family is mostly self-independent. It encompasses the lives of its members completely. It fulfills the majority of their needs. All members share the household chores. The work is divided according to the effort needed to do the job, the members' age and gender.

Structure of authority : The oldest member of the undivided family has the authority to take decisions. Even when he transfers it, the policy of seniority in age is followed.

EXERCISES

I. Fill in the blanks with suitable words.

1. The word 'family' has originated from the Latin word _____.
2. The living cell of the society is _____.
3. When the father is the head of the family, that family is called _____ family.
4. _____ family is seen among the Nairs of Malabar in Kerala.

II. Answer the following questions.

1. How is the family a unit of society?
2. Name the different kinds of families.
3. What do you mean by 'Undivided Family'?
4. What is meant by 'Nuclear Family'?
5. What are the features of a family?

6. Describe the role of childhood and youth in the social developmental stages of an individual.
7. Describe the features of an undivided family.
8. What are the reasons for the increase in the number of divided families?

III. Activity.

1. Discuss the advantages and disadvantages of divided and undivided families.
2. Visit a tribal area and learn about their family system.

IV. Project Work.

1. Collect more information about matriarchal and patriarchal families.
2. Discuss with your elders and draw a family tree from the time of your great-grandfather to your time.

SOCIALISATION AND FAMILY RELATIONSHIPS

We learn about the following in this chapter,

- the meaning of socialisation and its importance
- the influence of socialisation on an individual
- agents of socialisation

Socialisation

Man is a social animal. When his/her offspring takes birth, it is just like any other animal. It evolves into a social being over a period of time. This process of taking birth and slowly evolving into a social individual is known as socialisation.

Socialisation is universal. It goes on throughout a person's lifetime. Animals follow only their basic instincts. There is no variety in their behaviour. They have a limited capacity for learning. But man is not like them. The instincts that are inborn in him/her and the culture around him/her influence them immensely. He utilises the natural capability for learning in a suitable manner. He attempts to adjust to his environment and situations, and live in a harmonious manner. He tries to follow the cultural aspects of his society like the prevailing traditions, customs and moral principles. He assimilates them in his social behavior. All this is enabled through socialisation. Hence, socialisation is a unique feature of man.

The new-born infant is not capable of participating actively in society. Its mind cannot be understood by us. However, we do learn that the baby has no interest in controlling its bodily movements. It has not yet learnt to talk about its body or to express its desires. It is not aware of itself yet. Gradually, the baby goes on developing its relationships in society and learning about itself. The learning which motivates the child to participate in society and gives it capability to do so is known as socialisation. Culture is the result of what is learnt through socialisation.

The importance and functions of socialisation

- It makes man a member of a group
- It enables development of the personality
- It inculcates discipline in life
- It provides opportunity for the learning and assimilation of various skills
- It helps to cultivate the right kind of ambitions
- It reduces the gap in society
- It provides opportunity for shaping a bright future
- It is helpful in perpetuation of culture
- It provides support to the social system.

The agents of socialisation : Two kinds of influences can be identified among the agents responsible for socialisation. Firstly, age, experience and the influence of elders. Secondly, the influence of peers. Parents, teachers, elders and officials can be included in the first group. Friends and peers can be included in the second group. On the basis of this, we can identify the following agents of socialisation:

- 1. Family :** The role of the family is very important in a child's socialisation. The parents are the direct blood relatives of the child.

The saying that the mother is the first teacher to the child and the family the first school of the child is literally true. The words, behavior, activities, and transactions of the parents have a deep impact on the moral and emotional growth of the child. The child learns its first lesson in love, affection, trust, patience, kindness, co-operation and other values at home. The praise of its parents stimulates and encourages its activities. When it errs, punishment by the parents brings it back onto the right path. As the parents are senior to children in age, experience and power, children behave in an obedient manner. They are influenced by the intimacy with

Activity :

List out the activities of grand mother, father, mother, brother, sister, sister-in-law in your family.

their parents. The minds of the children which are like small buds, blossom fresh and fragrant under the influence of socialisation.

2. Peers : Peers, playmates and friends form a very important factor of socialisation. This relationship is based on co-operation and mutual adjustment. They are mostly of the same age. As a result, the child learns from its peers what it cannot learn from its parents and teachers. This kind of knowledge is important from the view point of society.

3. Religion : Religion also plays an important role in socialisation. Religion provides a foundation of ideals to social life. It preaches a life of morality. Children observe parents, elders and relatives visiting places of worship. They participate in poojas, festivals, fairs and other religious celebrations. They learn religious practices. Through these, they develop an interest in social service, charity etc. and enable social welfare.

4. School : The school occupies an important place in the process of socialisation of the child. The child gets influenced by its teachers and friends in addition to the influence of education. Through education, the child's behavior, knowledge, morality and attitude are shaped.



The child's innate abilities and talents get exposure. By expanding the horizon of life, education prepares the children for the future. The role of teachers is very significant in the social development of the child. At that age, they are more influenced by their teachers. The good behavior, noble thinking and sense of equality expressed in the teachers' behavior make the children imbibe love, trust, patience, kindheartedness and other values of life. Teachers should encourage children take part in extra-curricular and creative activities. The syllabus should include vocational training, sex education, spiritual

education, physical education, life skills etc. When the child learns these aspects, its socialisation is complete.

- 5. Mass Media :** In today's modern society, mass media play a vital role.

Television, movies, newspapers, periodicals, dramas, radio and other media make use of literature on a large scale. Advertisements, radio programmes, stories, poems, novels, dramas, dance, music, posters, quotations from great men, proverbs and words of wisdom influence children. The mass media can be used effectively through the news reports, quiz programs, introduction of great personalities, interviews, debates, travel reports and investigations. Programmes of educational importance have a direct bearing on the personality and good conduct of the child. The adolescent and the youth are moving away from values and culture.

- 6. Neighbourhood :** The people living in houses close to the child's house form the neighbourhood. It is a small group

having the characteristics of a community. The neighbourhood is a small group. People have mutual relations. They render various services to the people of their area. The role of neighbourhood is seen in both villages and cities. But the nature and type of neighbourhood is different. The role of neighbourhood is very significant in villages. Neighbours share one another's happiness and sorrow, and live like members of the same family. They interact with each other with regard to their tastes, religious functions, marriages and other events. In villages we see people solely depending on their neighbours in every difficult situation. But such trust and confidence in the neighbourhood cannot be seen in cities. Normally, in cities, neighbours are identified as individuals rather than our own people.

Think it over :

In the background of socialization, think about the effectiveness of your role in the school.

Activity :

Analyse the relationship of your family with neighbourhood

Sex and socialization : As already described, socialisation is essential for every human being. Although all human beings become social beings through socialisation, the processes of socialisation are not the same in every family. Parents' customs, educational status, ambitions, interests and priorities influence the process of socialisation. In the process of socialisation, with or without their knowledge, parents teach their sons and daughters customs and morals in different ways. For ex: There is a difference in the treatment of a boy coming home late after playing and a girl's coming home late. The boy is treated with kind words whereas the girl is admonished for her delay. She is asked to reach home before dark. Especially in India, daughters are expected to assist the mother in cooking whereas this is not expected of sons. In the same manner, daughters are given a musical instrument while sons are given sports materials. In this manner, the process of socialisation goes on in different ways based on the gender of the child. This difference in treatment is called gender discrimination.

In the modern complex society, the status of women is undergoing remarkable change. It varies from time to time and nation to nation. In India, nationalistic and democratic awareness, new economic system and modern education have liberated women and given a new dimension to their status. The positions which were enjoyed only by men are now being made available to women. However, the division of labour according to the gender continues even today. Nowadays, women are slowly getting opportunities in strenuous jobs like mining, steel factories, digging tunnels and excavating wealth from the ocean depths. Women are entering fields like medicine, judiciary, doctoral research, industrial work, military service and production of ammunition.

Activity :

Collect the information about special achievements by women.

After independence, the principle of equality and the decisions taken by the Indian government for education of women, specific programmes, economic development, urbanisation and the changes in the attitude of society have enabled removal of gender inequality.

EXERCISES

I. Fill in the blanks with suitable words.

1. The process of evolution of man as a social being is called _____.
2. Mother is the child's first _____.
3. The tender minds of children blossom through _____.

II. Discuss in group and answer the following questions.

1. Explain the role of peers in socialisation.
2. What are the values a child learns in a family atmosphere?
3. What is the role of religion in socialisation?
4. Write a paragraph on the importance of socialisation.
5. Explain the role of the school in the process of socialisation.
6. How do the mass media work as an agent of socialisation in the modern society?

III. Activities.

1. Have an essay competition on 'The role of mass media in the building of society'.
2. Collect articles from newspapers on socialisation.

IV. Project Work.

Collect information about the women of Karnataka who have great achievements to their credit.

CITIES AND OTHER COMMUNITIES

We learn about the following in this chapter,

- City - meaning and the features of urban communities
- the relationship of industrialisation and urbanisation
- the features of rural and tribal communities

What is the meaning of city ?

A city is the permanent settlement of people having high population density and variety of social strata. The census of India 2011 prescribed the following norms to identify a place as a city:

1. minimum population of 50,000
2. population density of 1000 per sq.miles
3. majority of the people occupied in non-agricultural activities
4. availability of civic amenities
5. People identify community as town, city and metropolitan city.



City

Do this yourself :

Make List of the differences between the city and village near your place (population, area, civic amenities)

Features of cities:

1. Variety of social strata
2. Anonymity
3. Increased social movement
4. Greater emphasis on individualism, materialistic comfort and privacy
5. Development of associations and unions
6. Families of small size
7. Fast pace of social reforms

Industrialisation and Urbanisation :

Industrialisation means the change in technology used in production of materials and service. To be specific, this term is used to indicate the development of the manufacturing industry.

Because of the monopolistic attitude of the British Government, till I World War, they did not establish any industries in India. Subsequently, establishment of industries resulted in destruction of old cottage industries. Villagers were brought to cities and industrial centers. Not only did the villagers desert their villages and take shelter in cities, but they also accepted the available opportunities to work. Geographical and industrial movement brought people closer. Railways and surface transport like buses brought people together. More than anything else, industrialisation changed our social environment and created cities.



Industry

Do this yourself :

List the names of huge industries in your district and note down the products they manufacture.

Community

Man cannot live alone. He is a social animal. He establishes various relations with the members of the group he lives in. Not only does he settle down to live with the members of a specific area, but he also develops gregariousness and social concern. Due to this, a sense of togetherness develops. This type of living in a specific area and leading a simple social life is called a community. A community has the following features :

1. Group of people
2. Limited specific area
3. Feelings of togetherness
4. Common vision of life
5. Not established by law

Rural community and its features

Rural community is the cornerstone of Indian society. Location of this community is the village. Villages occupy a very important place in the development of Indian culture and history. Organised groups leading a social life in a specific area is called a community. A group of people leading a simple life in a limited land area is called a village. The village is a small group of people who not only engage in agriculture for their livelihood but also follow it as a way of life.

Activity :

What do you know about your neighborhood relationship ? Meet elders and collect information.

Features of a rural community

Each village differs from the other in terms of population, area and way of life. The village in the plains is different from the village in the coastal area. There may be differences in the lifestyle found in villages in deserts or mountains and hills. In spite of variations, there are some characteristics which are common to all villages. They are :

1. Small community
2. Harmonious relationships
3. Social unity
4. Informal system of control
5. Prominence of undivided families
6. Prominence of agriculture
7. Influence of nature
8. Influence of the neighbourhood
9. Simplicity
10. Increased religious involvement
11. Traditional opinions
12. Wide-spread caste system
13. Illiteracy, poverty etc.



Rural community

Problems of rural community :

1. Agricultural problems
2. Problems related to cottage industries
3. Illiteracy, poverty and unemployment
4. Lack of proper health facilities
5. Lack of civic amenities

Do you know this :

Based on the fairs conducted in your area, observe the features of rural community and prepare a report.

Tribal community and its features :

The group of people who live far away from urban communities in forests, valleys and hills is called tribal community. They are the same throughout the world and are in a significant number in some countries. After Africa, India has the largest number of tribal people. Anthropology defines a tribe thus: 'a group usually restricted to a specific geographical area, having its own language, cultural harmony and social organization'. The Indian tribes can be classified under three groups: Negrito, Mongolian and Meditteranean.

Features of tribal community:

1. Common geographical area
2. Group of family/cluster of families
3. Inter-relatedness
4. Common language
5. Simplicity and self-contained nature
6. Common religion
7. Common culture
8. Common name
9. Sense of unity
10. Illiteracy



Tribal Community

Indian tribes have been geographically classified into three groups:

Tribals of the North region: These people who belong to the Mongolian race can be seen in Nagaland, Meghalaya, Arunachalapradesh, Assam, Tripura and Manipur. They speak languages that belong to the China-Tibet family of languages. The different sects among them are Gurung, Limbi, Leppa, Aka, Mishi, Garo, Khasi, Chakma, Naga, Sema and Kachari.

Tribals of the Central region : These people can be seen in the mountains and valleys to the south of river Ganga and to the north of river Krishna. Tribals like Santhals, Munda, Bhil, Gonda, Oran, Baiga, Khariya, Khonda, Kola, Bhumi, Savar etc. are settled in these areas. They are more developed when compared to other tribes in the country.

The Southern tribes: The southern region comprises the area to the south of river Krishna and to the north of Kanyakumari. Tribes

are found in some parts of Andhra Pradesh, Karnataka, Kerala and Tamil Nadu. These tribes are Soliga, Yerava, Todava, Kota, Chenchu, Paniya, Kadar, Siddhi, Jenukuruba etc.

In addition to the above, the tribes living in Andaman and Nicobar islands can be considered the fourth group. The important tribes of this region are: Jwara, Onge, Senthineli, Andaman and Nicobaris.

EXERCISES

I. Fill in the blanks with suitable words.

1. _____ means a group of people living in a specific area and leading a common, social life.
2. The cornerstone of Indian society is _____ community.
3. The tribes of the eastern region belong to the _____ race.

II. Answer the following questions.

1. What is meant by a 'city'?
2. What does industrialisation suggest?
3. Explain the term 'village'.
4. How does anthropology define 'tribe'?
5. Explain the features of a city.
6. List out the features of a rural community.
7. What are the problems of rural communities?
8. Identify the unique features of tribal communities.
9. How are the Indian tribes classified?

III. Activity.

1. Have a debate on the advantages and disadvantages of city and village life.
2. Collect information about the life style of a tribal community near your place.

IV. Project Work.

Collect information from members of a tribe about the steps taken by the Gram Panchayat/Town Council to provide civic amenities in the tribal village.

GEOGRAPHY

CHAPTER - 1

OUR STATE - KARNATAKA

We learn about the following in this chapter,

- the greatness of our state and its heritage.
- the origin of the name 'Karnataka' and the form of the state.
- the geographical location, size, land and water frontiers, and neighbouring states of Karnataka.

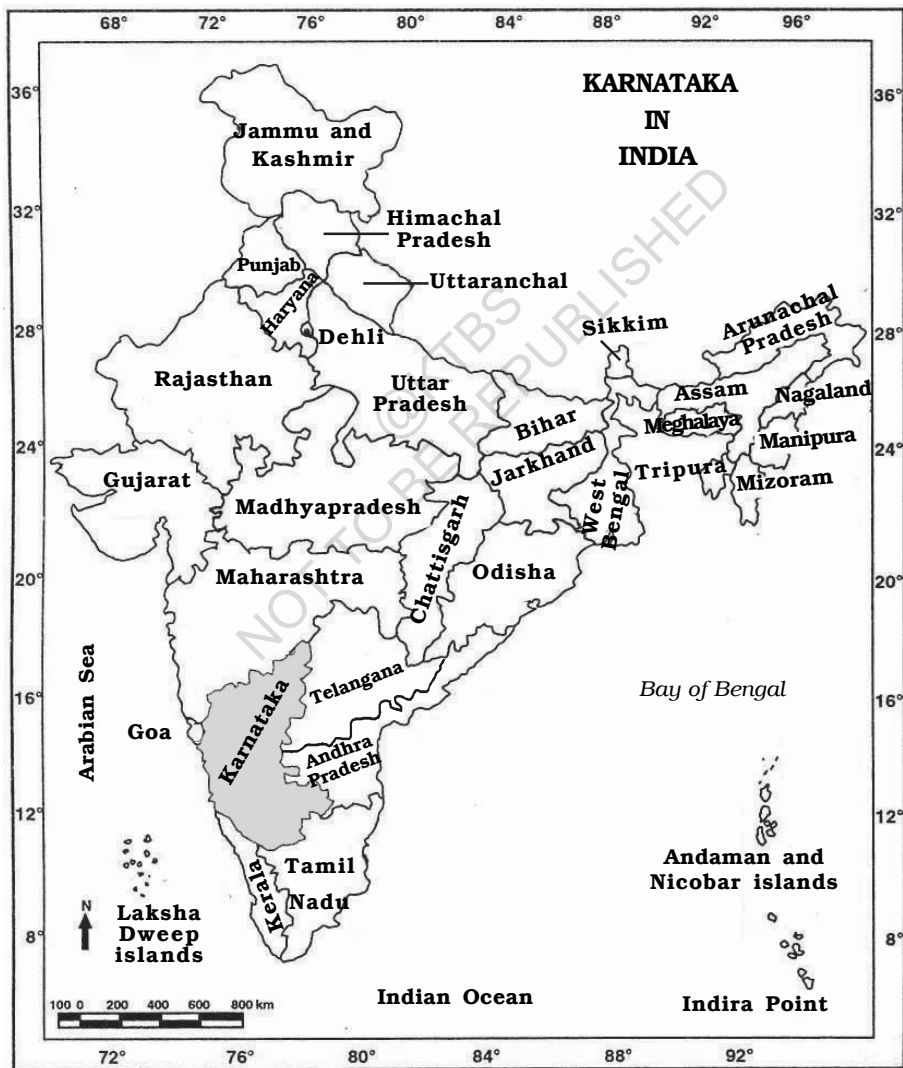
In the previous class, you have studied about physical geography. In this lesson we will study about our state Karnataka, the land of Kannadigas. It is one of the Indian States which has its own greatness, prestige and heritage. This land has an ideal situation and is blessed with diverse relief features, flora and fauna, different types of soil, river systems, minerals and human resources. It is a prosperous land with its own literature, art and culture and has religious, spiritual and historically famous pilgrim centres. Many places in Karnataka are famous for their world heritage site and its natural beauty and abundance of wild life.

Origin of the name : The name 'Karnataka' has been in use from ancient times. This land used to be called '*Karunadu*' (kar+nadu = a land of black soil). The word '*Karunat*' refers to Karnataka in the ancient Tamil work '*Shilappadikaram*'. *Karunat* means the land which is on an elevated plateau. It has been mentioned in Nrupatunga's grammatical work *Kavirajamarga* that Karnataka extended from the Cauvery river upto the Godavari river. After Independence, India was divided into many states. In 1953, nine southern districts which were till then under the rule of the Mysuru kings, were brought together to form the 'Mysuru State'. Later, when the States were reorganized on linguistic basis, areas with Kannada-speaking people in Bombay, Hyderabad, Madras and Kodagu provinces were brought together. Thus, on 1st November 1956, the 'Vishal Mysuru State' came into being. It is in fond commemoration of this event that Rajyotsava is celebrated every year on 1st November. In 1973, in

response to the wishes of Kannadigas, our State was renamed as Karnataka.

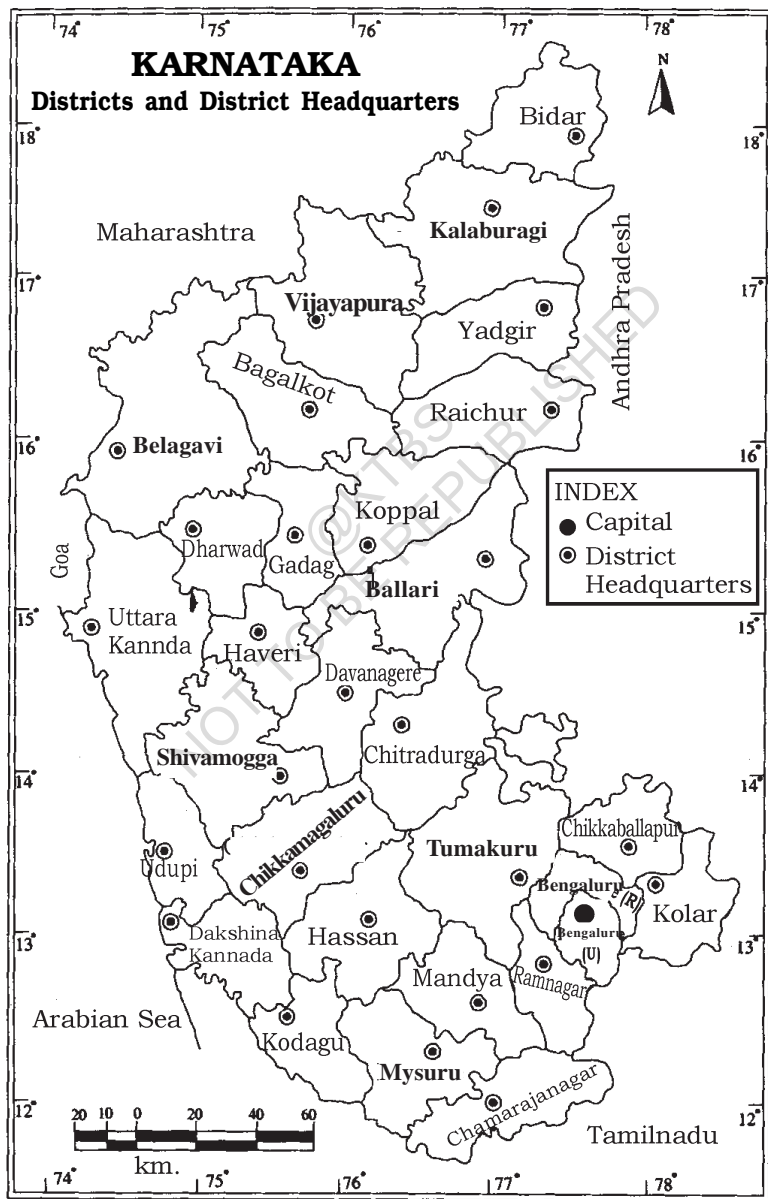
Geographical Location

Karnataka is one of the 28 States of India. It is situated in the Southern part of India, in the Western Central area of the peninsular region. It extends from $11^{\circ}-31'$ North to $18^{\circ}-45'$ North latitude and $74^{\circ}-12'$ East to $78^{\circ}-40'$ East longitude. Its length is 750 km., stretching from Aurad taluk in Bidar district in the northern-most tip of the State to Chamarajnagar district in the south. Its width is



Location of Karnataka in India

400 km. from west to east. Karwar in Uttar Kannada district is at the western end whereas Mulbagal taluk in Kolar district is at the eastern end. Karnataka state has both land and water frontiers too. The Arabian Sea in the west, states of Maharashtra in the north, Andhra Pradesh in the east, Tamil Nadu in the south and south-east, Kerala in the south-west, and Goa in the north-west form its frontiers. The shape of Karnataka resembles a cashewnut.



Districts and District headquarters

Size

Karnataka stretches over an area of 1,91,791 sq.kms. It is India's eighth largest state with regard to area, and according to the 2011 census, it has the ninth position, with a population of 6,11,30,704. Karnataka occupies 5.83 % of India's geographical area.

Do you know this :

Bidar, Raichur, Kalaburagi, Koppal, Yadgir and Ballari districts of Hyderabad, Karnataka, are provided a special status by the central Government.

At present, there are 30 districts in our State. These districts comprises 176 taluks, 747 hoblies, 347 towns and cities and 27,481 villages. Belagavi district is the largest in size, and Bengaluru Urban district is the smallest. Bengaluru is the capital of Karnataka. The State has been divided into four divisions for administrative convenience. They are : Bengaluru, Mysuru, Belagavi and Kalaburagi

EXERCISES

I. Fill in the blanks with suitable words.

1. We celebrate Kannada Rajyotsava on _____.
2. The year in which the State was named as Karnataka is _____.
3. The State to the east of Karnataka is _____.
4. The largest district in Karnataka is _____.
5. The total area of Karnataka is _____ sq.kms.

II. Discuss in groups and answer the following questions.

1. Give the latitudinal and longitudinal extent of Karnataka.
2. Name karnataka's neighbouring states.
3. Which are the four administrative divisions of Karnataka?
4. Explain the geographical location of Karnataka in India.

III. Activities.

1. Draw an outline map of Karnataka, mark and name its districts and also indicate the latitudinal and longitudinal positions.

IV. Project.

1. Draw an outline map of your district/town/city with the help of your teacher, indicate its latitudinal and longitudinal positions and mark the neighboring districts.

PHYSIOGRAPHIC DIVISIONS

We learn about the following in this chapter,

- the features of Karnataka.
- physical divisions of Karnataka.
- the hills and highest peaks of Karnataka.

Karnataka state is a part of peninsular India and has diverse physical features. Its southern part consists of undulating topography, whereas the northern part is a vast plain. There is great contrast between the Coastal areas and Malnad region. The land slopes slightly towards the east and steeply towards the west. This is traversed by many ridges with valleys and gorges. Most of the area of the state is 450 to 900 meters above sea level. Some areas are more than 1800 meters above sea level.

On the basis of structure and relief, Karnataka can be divided into three important physical divisions : 1. The Coastal Plain 2. The Malnad region and 3. The Maidan region.

1. The Coastal Plain

As a result of the reorganization of states on linguistic basis, Karnataka acquired sea coast and coastal plains as part of its territory. This physical division lies between the Arabian Sea and the Malnad region. The coastline extends to 320 kms from Mangaluru in the south to Karwar in the north. Its width varies from 12 to 64 kms. It is broad in the south and becoming narrow (with steep slopes) towards the north. Its height is more than 200 meters above sea level. It is called the **'Canara or the Karnataka Coastline'**. Many fast flowing rivers cut through the coastal areas is formed by sea erosion. The rivers have formed estuaries. However, there are no deltas in this area.

There are many ports along the coastline. Among them, **'New Mangaluru'** is the major port in Karnataka. Bhatkala, Malpe, Karwar, Kumta, Belekere and Honnavar are fishing ports. Many beautiful beaches are formed along the sea-coast, attract tourists. Some of

the prominent beaches are Panambur, Ullal and Someswara beaches near Mangaluru, Malpe near Udupi, Karwar in the north, Murdeshwar near Honnavar, Maravanthe and Om beach near Gokarna. There are some small islands located near the sea-coast. Among them are St. Mary's Island (Coconut Island), near Malpe, Anja near Karwar and Devgad, Kanjigudda islands are notable. The main occupation of the people near the coast is fishing. Agriculture is also another important occupation. Crops like cashew, coconut, arecanut, cardamom and paddy are grown here. Dakshina Kannada, Udupi and Uttarakannada are the coastal districts of Karnataka.

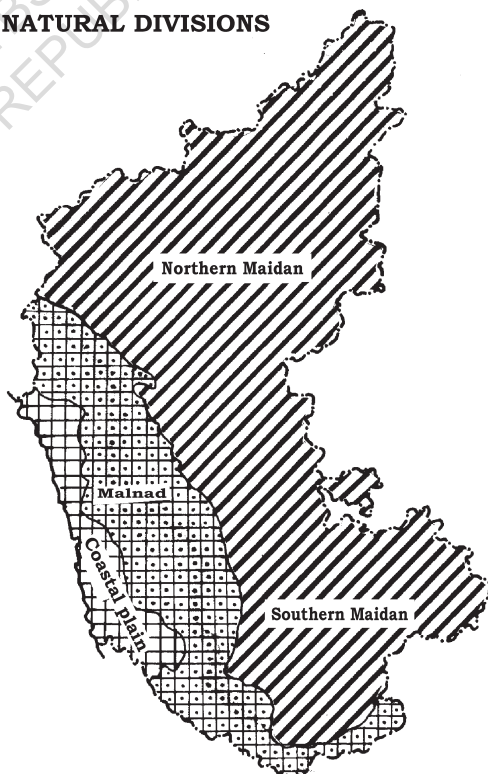
2. The Malnad Region

The Western Ghats in our state are referred to as Malnad or the land of hills. They are also called the Sahyadris. Malnad runs parallel to the coastline from north to south. They have steep terrace like slopes in the west and gentle slope to the east. Hence they are called Ghats. They are 650 kms in length and 50-76 kms in width. The height ranges from 900 to 1500 meters from sea level. These hills obstruct the rain-bearing winds from the Arabian Sea and cause heavy rains often more than 200 cms. The highest peaks in this region are Mullaiyanagiri, Kudremukh, Kalhattagiri, Rudragiri and Deveerammanagudda. All these Peaks are in Chikkamagaluru

Do you know this?

- The New Mangaluru Port is called 'The Gateway to Karnataka'.
- St. Mary's Island is referred locally as 'Tonsepaar'.
- There is a Netrani island near Murudeswara and it has plenty of pigeon. So it is known as 'pigeon island'.

NATURAL DIVISIONS



district. Besides these the other peaks of Malnad region are Ballalarayanadurga, Mertigudda, Pushpagiri and Kodachadri. Among them, Mullaiyanagiri (1913 mtrs) is the highest peak in the State.

The routes, from the eastern plains of Karnataka to the coastal plains across the Western Ghats are called the mountain passes. The important passes are :

1. **Charmadi Ghat** - It links Mangaluru and Chikkamagaluru.
2. **Shiradi Ghat** - It links Hassan - Sakleshpur and Mangaluru.
3. **Agumbe Ghat** - It links Shivamogga and Udupi.
4. **Hulikal Ghat** - It links Shivamogga and Kundapur.

Since Malnad region receives heavy rainfall, it has attractive hill resort covered with dense evergreen forests. It is the birthplace of many rivers which, when they fast down the steep slopes, form wonderful waterfalls. The Jogfalls (Sharavathi river), is the highest waterfall of India. The other prominent water falls are the Unchalli, Magod, Gokak, Shivanasamudra and Abbey falls. The rivers have led to the formation of valleys and gorges. Coffee, tea, rubber plantations and spices are grown abundantly on the slopes. Since coffee is grown widely in Chikkamagaluru, it is called 'The Land of Coffee'. Kodagu district is known as the 'Kashmir of Karnataka' because of its cool weather. As oranges are grown abundantly in Kodagu district, it is also referred to as the 'Land of Oranges'. At present, Malnad has been identified as 'Biodiversity Zone' and protected. Hassan, Kodagu, Shivamogga and Chikkamagaluru are the districts of Malnad region.

Do you know this?

Chandradrona parvata is another name of Bababudangiri.

3. The Maidan Region

To the east of Malnad is a vast plain with a height of approximately 450 to 760 meters. Its areas are irrigated by the Krishna, the Tungabhadra and the Cauvery. There are many ridges in this area. It has land sloping towards the east, rising in height from north to south. The maidan can be divided into two parts : (i) The Northern maidan (ii) The Southern maidan.

Activity

In which of the Physical division is your district situated? Name your neighbouring districts. Make a list of special features of your district.

i) The Northern maidan : It is a vast plain land with black soil, and is an extensive plateau. It is around 365 to 610 meters above sea level. Hills and hillocks can be seen at different places. Prominent among them are Naragund hill, Parasagada gudda, Gurumitkalgudda and Ilkal gudda. Areas to the east of Saudatti and Badami have limestone with faulting. It has produced rugged landforms. The most important waterfall of the region is Gokak falls. it is 62mts height and created by the Gataprabha river. Chayabhagavathi and Sogala are the other water falls in this region. The districts of Bidar, Vijayapura, Kalaburagi, Yadgiri, Gadag, Koppal, Raichur, Ballari, Haveri, Bagalkot and some parts of Dharwad and Belagavi districts are located in the northern maidan. This region is very hot in summer and it is called the 'land of sunshine'. Dry crops like jowar, bajra, groundnut, cotton and pulses are mainly grown here.

ii) The Southern maidan : This area extends from the Tungabhadra river basin in the north to Chamrajnagar district in the south. It is a plateau with abundant red soil. It has uneven surface with many ups and downs, and has a height of 900 to 975 meters. It is higher than the northern maidan and slopes towards the east. There are many hills. They are, Chitradurga hills, Narayana durga, Savanadurga and Shivaganga in Bengaluru rural district, Madhugiri hill in Tumakuru district is the biggest 'monolith hill' in Asia, Nandi hills, Chennakeshava hill, Kavaledurga and Skandagiri hill (Harihareswara hill) in Chikkaballapura district, Adichunchanagiri hills in Mandya district, Biligirirangana hill, Malemadeswara hill, Himad gopalaswamy hills in Chamarajanagar district, Chamundi hill



Mullaiyanagiri



Madhugiri - a single rock hill

in Mysuru district are prominent. This area is in the rain-shadow of the Western Ghats. The Cauvery, Palar and Pennar are the important rivers flowing through this region. Ragi, paddy, sugarcane, groundnut, mulberry, vegetables, a variety of fruits and flowers are the main crops grown here. Davanagere, Chitradurga, Tumakuru, Kolar, Mandya, Mysuru and Chamarajnagar districts are in the Southern maidan.

EXERCISES

I. Fill in the blanks with suitable words :

1. _____ island is located near Malpe.
2. _____ are called Sahyadris.
3. Agumbe Ghat links _____ and _____.
4. _____ district is known as the Kashmir of Karnataka.

II. Discuss in groups and answer the following questions :

1. Mention the important physical divisions of Karnataka.
2. Write a note on the relief features of Malnad region.
3. Give an account on the coastal plains of Karnataka.
4. Name the main hills of Southern maidan.
5. Mention the mountain passes in the Western Ghats.

III. Match the following :

A

1. Jogfalls
2. Om beach
3. Nandi hill station
4. Monolith hill
5. Land of sunshine

B

- a. Mangaluru
- b. Northern maidan
- c. Sharavati river
- d. Gokarna
- e. Chikballapur
- g. Madhugiri

IV. Activity :

1. Mark and name the coastal districts and the districts of Malnad on the map of Karnataka and collect pictures of famous waterfalls.

CLIMATE, SOIL, NATURAL VEGETATION AND ANIMALS OF KARNATAKA

We learn about the following in this chapter,

- the main features of the climate of Karnataka.
- know about the seasonal changes in the climate of Karnataka.
- understand the seasonal distribution of rain fall in Karnataka and its effects.
- types and distribution of soil in Karnataka.
- the types, distribution of natural vegetation and animals of Karnataka.

CLIMATE

Karnataka has tropical monsoon climate. The main characteristics of this climate are hot and moist summers and cool and dry winters. But there is diversity in the climate of the state. The main reason for this diversity are the influence of geographical location, oceans, physical features, vegetation and monsoon winds. Hence the annual temperature and distribution of rain are not the same all over the state.

Climatic Seasons : We can classify the climate of Karnataka over a period of one year, as can be done with the climate of India, into four parts:

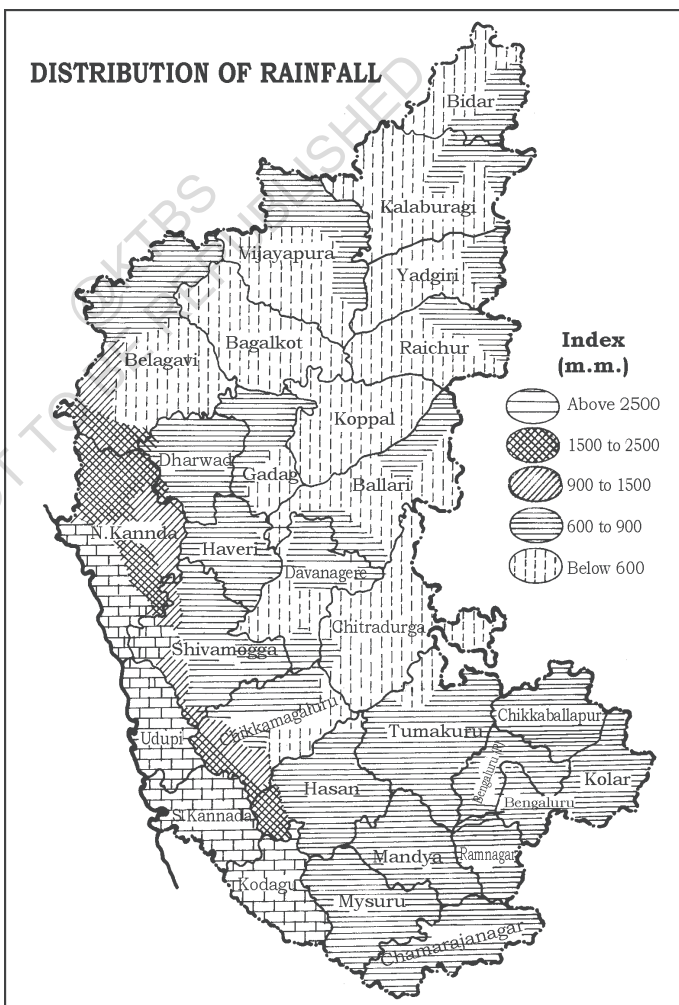
1. The summer season (March to May)
2. The rainy season (June to September)
3. The period of Retreating Monsoons (October – November)
4. The winter season (December – February)

1. Summer Season : During this season, it is very hot, dry and sultry. After March, the temperature rises uniformly all over the state and reaches the maximum during April and May. Raichur has

recorded the temperature of 45.6° Celsius and it is the hottest place in Karnataka. The temperature is high even in the other districts of the northern maidan. In general, the whole of Karnataka experiences hot climatic conditions during at this time. The humidity is lower in the northern maidan than in the southern maidan. In summer, due to great evaporation, rain-bearing clouds are produced and they bring convectional rain along with lightning and thunder. The Hailstones fall in some places. This generally takes place for a short time during the afternoon. Since these showers enable the flowering of coffee plants, they are called 'Cherry Blossoms', and since they help the mango crop, they are also known as 'Mango showers'. About 7% of the annual rainfall of the state occur during this season.

2. The Rainy Season:

This is also known as the season of South-West Monsoon winds. The Western Ghats check the moisture-laden winds blowing from the Arabian Sea, resulting in heavy rain. As it moves eastward, the amount of rainfall gets reduced. This is because, the eastern maidan is in the rain-shadow area. Agumbe is an area of heavy rainfall. Hence it is called 'Cheerapunji of South India'. Bhagamandala and Hulikal are the other places of heavy rainfall. Nayakna Hatti



near Chellakere in Chitradurga records the lowest rainfall. During this season, in the entire state the temperature is very high. As a result the relative humidity is very high. There is cloudy atmosphere throughout. During this season, Karnataka receives about 80% of its rainfall. This helps in the cultivation of Kharif crops.

3. The Period of Retreating Monsoon : This is also called the North-East Monsoon Season. Due to the decrease in temperature and increase in pressure, the winds blow from the north –east to the south- west. These winds are dry because they blow from the land. The winds which blow from the Bay of Bengal bring a little rain to the districts of the southern maidan. Besides due to the cyclones coming from the Bay of Bengal during November – December, rainfall occurs. During this season, the state receives about 12% of the rainfall. In this period, the weather condition are uncertain.

4. The Winter Season : During this season, temperature, humidity and rainfall are low. The sky is clear. The average temperature is between 25° and 27°C. January is the month which records the lowest temperature. This is called 'the Tourist Month of the State'. The minimum temperature recorded in Belagavi is (6.7°C). There is low temperature in other Northern districts. i.e. Vijayapura, Kalaburagi and Bidar. Rainfall during winter is minimum. Only one percent of the total rainfall is received during this time. There is heavy fog occasionally early in the mornings.

Activity :

Among the summer, winter and rainy seasons which one you like? Why? Given reason.

Distribution of Rainfall : The Malnad and coastal plains receive heavy rain fall. The Eastern Maidans are the areas of low rainfall. Often drought and floods occur due to uneven and uncertain rainfall.

SOILS OF KARNATAKA

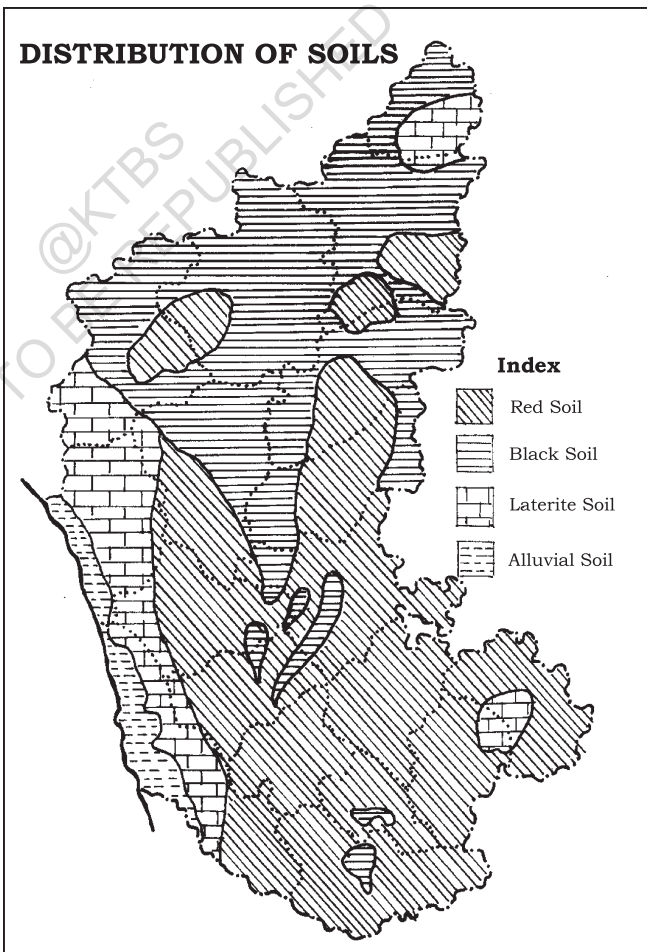
The top thin layer of the earth surface is called soil. Fertile soil is essential for agriculture. There are different kinds of soils in Karnataka. The soils of Karnataka have been classified into four types: (1) Red soil, (2) Black soil, (3) Laterite soil, (4) Coastal Alluvial soil.

1) Red Soil : This type of soil is obtained from the weathering of granite and gneiss. It contains iron oxides and hence it is red in colour. It is rich in iron, lime and salt, but contain small amounts of

humus. It is light, has thin layers and it is not very fertile. Its capacity for moisture retention is less. It is widely distributed in Karnataka, and found more in south Karnataka. Ragi, jowar, bajra millets, pulses, tobacco and groundnut which are rain-fed crops, can be grown in this soil. Areas with irrigation facilities can grow paddy, sugarcane, potato, vegetables, banana, coconut and arecanut. Red soil is found in Tumakuru, Bengaluru, Ramnagar, Chikballapur, Kolar, Chamarajnagar, Mandya and Mysuru.

2) Black Soil : This kind of soil is formed by the weathering of basalt rocks. It is rich in aluminium, magnesium and oxides of iron. Hence it is black in colour. It is also called 'black cotton soil'. This soil has the ability to retain moisture for many days. Since it is rich in soil nutrients, a variety of crops can be grown in this soil. For example ; cotton, jowar, maize, sunflower, chilli, paddy, pulses and onion. This type of soil is extensively found in districts of North Karnataka. eg., : Dharwad, Gadag, Ballari, Koppal, Kalaburagi, Yadgir, Bagalkot, Belagavi and Chitradurga.

3) Laterite Soil : This kind of soil is found in areas which receive heavy rainfall and have high temperature. Water-soluble lime and silicates dissolved in rain water settle down in the lower layers. Iron and aluminium, which are non-soluble, remain in the top layers. The soil becomes soft during rainy



season and dries up during summer, leading to the formation of laterite rock. This rock is used for construction purposes. Cashew, coffee, tea, cardamom, pepper, rubber, coconut and other commercial crops are grown in this soil. Uttara Kannada, Udupi, Dakshina Kannada, Kodagu, Chikkamagaluru, Shivamogga and Belagavi have more of this soil.

4) Coastal Alluvial Soil : This type of soil is formed along the coast due to the deposition of alluvium and sediments carried by the rivers and sea waves. As such, the coastal districts of Karnataka like Udupi, Dakshina Kannada and Uttara Kannada have this type of soil. This soil consists of sand and clay. It is very rich in organic nutrients. Paddy, cashew, coconut, arecanut, banana and other crops grow well in this type of soil.

NATURAL VEGETATION

The various kinds of plants and trees growing naturally are referred to as 'Natural Vegetation'. Karnataka has a rich diversity of plant species. The plant species play an important role in preserving the ecological balance. The trees provide timber, firewood, raw material for industries, medicinal herbs, honey, bamboo, cane etc. The forests being the habitat of wild animals, we can see tiger, lion, cheetahs, wild buffaloes, elephants, deer and peacocks in the forests of Karnataka. These forests are also places of entertainment and tourism. They help to control environmental pollution. Sandalwood is a special tree grown in forests of Karnataka. Perfume, objects with intricate carvings soap and medicines are manufactured from sandalwood. They are popular all over the world, and hence are not only supplied to other parts of the country but also exported to foreign countries. This is the reason Karnataka is known as 'the Land of Sandalwood'.

Types of Vegetation

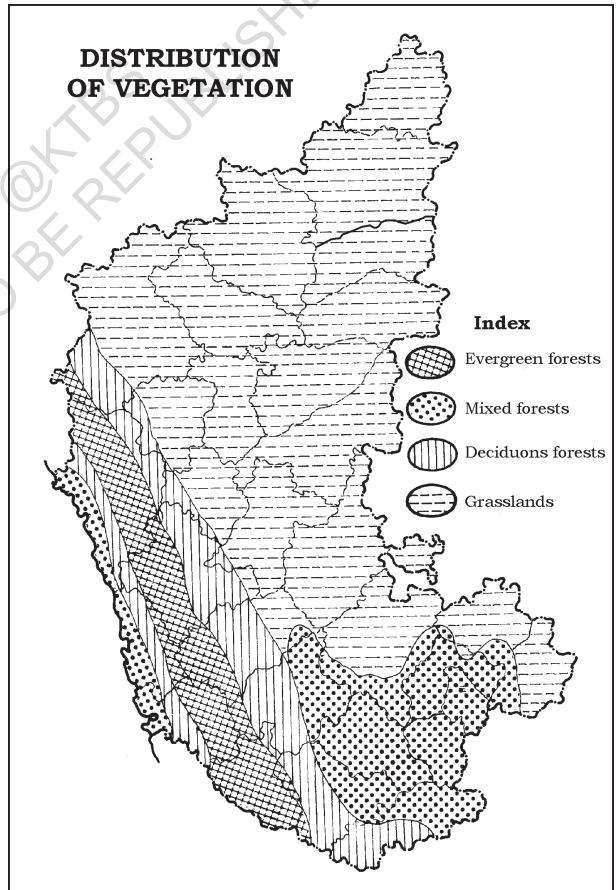
Natural Vegetation of Karnataka has been classified on the basis of rainfall, relief features and type of soil. They are :

- 1) Evergreen forests,
- 2) Deciduous forests,
- 3) Mixed Forests and
- 4) Grasslands and Shrubs.

1) Evergreen forests : Areas receiving more than 250 cms rainfall annually have this kind of forests. On account of heavy rain and high temperature, the trees grow tall and dense. These forests, being dense, are impenetrable. The sunlight does not reach the ground at all. Different types of tall trees like rosewood, mahogany, kino, teak, dhupa, and hebbalasu grow in these forests. At the base of these trees are thick shrubs. Different types of spices - cinnamon, cardamom, cloves and medicinal herbs grow in abundance. This kind of forests can be seen in parts of Uttara Kannada, Dakshina Kannada, Shivamogga, Hassan, Chikkamagaluru, Chamarajnagar and Kodagu districts.

2) Deciduous forests : After winter, due to lack of moisture in the soil the trees shed their leaves. The leaves reappear during spring. These are called deciduous forests. This kind of forests can be seen in areas receiving 60 to 120 cms of rainfall annually. For example, Chikkamagaluru, Mysuru, Chamrajnagar, eastern parts of Hassan, Tumakuru, Chikballapur, southern part of Kolar, Mandya, Ramanagar and Bengaluru Rural district. Teak, kino, mahogany, neem, mango, jack, flame, kokko, banyan, sandal and bamboo grow in plenty. These forests are not dense.

3) Mixed forests : The growing of evergreen and deciduous trees together form the mixed forests. Areas receiving 120 to 150 cms annual rainfall have this kind of forests. For example, Udupi, some parts of Uttara Kannada, Dakshina



Kannada, eastern parts of Kodagu, Chikkamagaluru, Hassan and Mysuru districts. Teak, kino, mahogany, axle, sandal, jack and bamboo grow in abundance. These trees have commercial value.

Know this :

- A big banyan tree at Ramohalli near Bengaluru.
- A big neem tree is found at T. venkatapura, near Siddlagatta.
- A big tamrind tree is near Savanur

4) Grasslands and Shrubs : Areas receiving less than 60 cm annual rainfall have this kind of vegetation. Due to scanty rain and dry weather there is short grass, thorny shrubs and scrub vegetation, for example ; cactus, acacias, babul, bela, palm trees, hanchi, kunti grass etc. Occasionally banyan, neem, peepul tree, palas trees grow here and there. This type of Vegetation is seen in Bidar, Kalaburagi, Yadgir, Raichur, Koppal, Vijayapura, Ballari, Chitradurga and other areas.

Deltas, estuaries and beaches in coastal areas have a peculiar type of vegetation that has aerial roots and can grow in salty water. These are called 'mangrove forests'. Distribution of such vegetation is limited in Karnataka.

Areas which are more than 1400 mts above sea level have cool climate, for example, Kudremukh, Bababudangiri, Biligirirangana betta (B.R.Hills) and Brahmagiri in Kodagu. They have grassy slopes. The deep valleys with streams, rills etc. have distinct "Shola forests".

Distribution of forests

The recorded forest area in Karnataka state is 43.4 lakh sq. kms. This forms 22.6 % of the total geographical area. Karnataka occupies the seventh place in forest resources in the country. Uttara Kannada district has the maximum forest area. Next to it are Shivamogga and Chamarajnagar districts. Vijayapura district has the least forest area.

ANIMAL RESOURCES

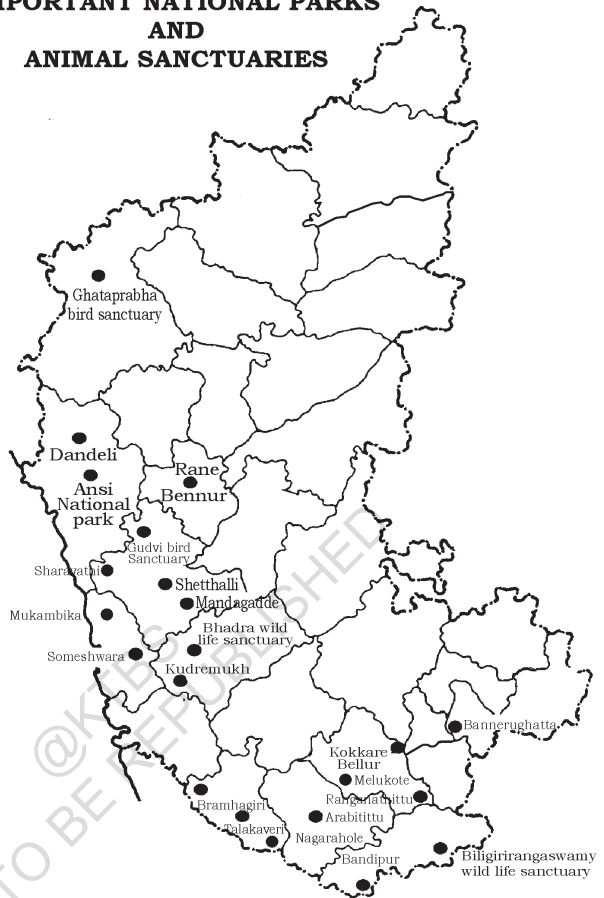
Karnataka has a variety of animal resources. The main reason for this is the abundant forest land. The Sahyadris rank among the hotspots of the world for their bio-diversity. Recently they have been declared as a 'World Heritage Area'. Nearly 25% of the animal

population and 10% of the tiger population in the entire country are found in Karnataka. In addition to this, there are other types of wild animals too, for eg. : Leopards, boar, bison, stag, deer, bear, porcupine etc. A variety of snakes and colourful birds can also be seen in the forests of Karnataka.

The central part of the Western Ghats in Karnataka is called Malnad and has retained its natural bio-diverse heritage. As such, this area has a rich variety of animal resources.

The important forest areas of Karnataka having wildlife are: Coastal region comprising of Uttara Kannada and Belagavi, Sahyadris-Malnad range eg., : Bababudangiri range, B.R.hills, Malemahadeswara hills, Gopalaswamy hills etc., in the southern maidan. Ranebennur is the main animal sanctuary in northern maidan. Now Karnataka has 5 national parks, 4 bird sanctuaries and about 17 wild life sanctuaries.

IMPORTANT NATIONAL PARKS AND ANIMAL SANCTUARIES



Know this :

- There are 3 Tiger projects in Karnataka, Bandipura, Bhadra and Nagarahole.
- The famous bird sanctuary of Karnataka is Ranganatittu.

EXERCISES

I. Fill in the blanks with suitable words.

1. The months of _____ form Summer season.
2. The season with heavy rainfall is _____.
3. Extensively soil found in North Karnataka is _____.
4. The area that has evergreen forests is _____.
5. The district that has large forest area in Karnataka is _____.

II. Discuss in groups and answer the following questions.

1. Name the four seasons of Karnataka.
2. Write a note on the rainy season in Karnataka.
3. Mention the types of soils in Karnataka.
4. Name the types of natural vegetation of Karnataka.
5. Why is Karnataka known as 'the Land of Sandalwood'?
6. Name the wild animals in our forests.

III. Match the following.

A

- 1) Adichunchanagiri
- 2) Mandagadde
- 3) Nagarahole
- 4) Sandalwood tree

B

- a) Bird Sanctuary
- b) National forest
- c) Deciduous forest
- d) Peacock Sanctuary
- e) Red soil

IV. Activities.

- 1) Collect pictures of wild animals of Karnataka and prepare an album. Make a list of bird sanctuaries and wild life sanctuaries.

V. Project.

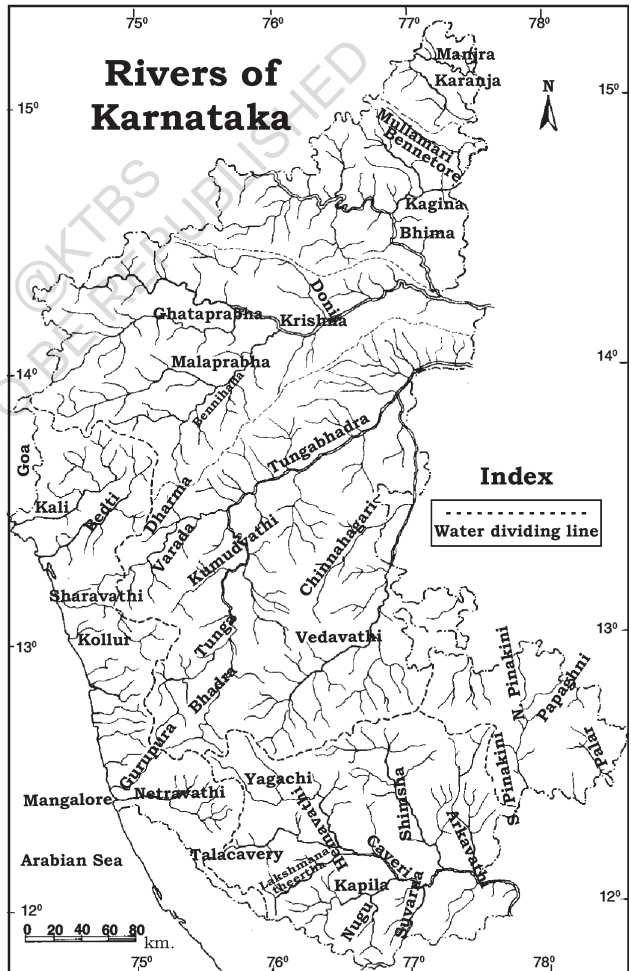
- 1) Discuss in groups and write an account of the vegetation found in your native district.

- the important rivers of Karnataka.
- the different types of irrigation in Karnataka.
- the importance of hydro-electric power stations.
- the major dams of Karnataka.
- the disputes regarding sharing of river water and the importance of conserving river water.

Rivers are the main source, water. The rivers of Karnataka can be divided into two groups : east flowing rivers and west flowing river.

River Cauvery has three waterfalls along its course namely-Chunchunkatte, Shivasamudra and Hogenakal, and three islands-Shrirangapatana, Sivasamudra and Shriranga

- River Malaprabha joins the Krishna at Kudalasangama.
- Kudli is the confluence of Tunga and Bhadra rivers.
- Hemavathi river joins the cauvery near K.R. Sagar.



1) The East Flowing River : The Krishna, the Cauvery, the Pennar and Palar rivers flows east wards and join the Bay of Bengal.

The Krishna is the second important river of South India. It takes birth at Mahabaleshwar and flows 1,392 kms eastwards to join the Bay of Bengal. But it flows for only 480 km. through Karnataka. The Bhima, Koyna, Tungabhadra, Ghataprabha and Malaprabha are its tributaries. Irrigation and hydro-electric power generation from the Krishna river system have benefited in Northern Karnataka.

Do you know this?

River Pennar is also known as pinakini.

Southern Pennar is known as Ponnaiyar in Tamil Nadu.

The Cauvery is the most important river of Karnataka. It is known as 'Dakshina Ganga'. It originates at Talacauvery in Kodagu district and flows 804 kms through Karnataka and Tamil Nadu eastwards and join the Bay of Bengal. It flows for only 380 kms in Karnataka. Many tributaries join this river, for example, the Hemavathi, Harangi, Lokapavani, Arkavathi, Shimsha, Lakshmanatirtha, Kapila, Suvarnavati and Bhavani. This river is most useful for agriculture, power generation and drinking water supply.

The Pennar and Palar rivers flow through the districts of Kolar, Tumakuru and Bengaluru, and then enter Andhra Pradesh and Tamil Nadu. North Pennar and South Pennar are two separate rivers.

2. The west flowing Rivers : Many rivers rise in Malnad, flow westwards and join the Arabian Sea, for example : the Sharavathi, Kali, Gangavali (Bedti), Netravathi, Varahi, Aghanashini etc. They flow down steep slopes and create waterfalls. They also helps to produced hydro-electric power. Jog Falls on Sharavati river is world-famous. It is the highest waterfall in India (293 mtrs).

The other important waterfalls are: Gokak (on Ghataprabha), Bandaje (on Netravathi), Unchalli (on Aghanashini), Chaya Bhagavati (on Don river), Chunchunkatte, Shimsha, Gaganachukki, Bharachukki (on Cauvery), Magodu waterfall (on Bedthi) etc.

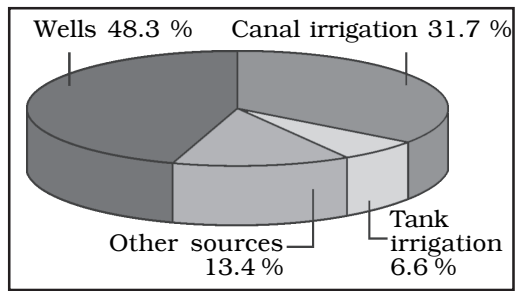
Do you know this

Large tanks in Karnataka

Mudagadakere (near Kadur), Tonnur kere (near Pandavapura), Hyrige (Hunsur), Ramasamudra kere (Chikkaballapura), Byrasagara kere (Gudibande), Kallambella kere (Sira), Byramanala kere (Bidadi)

IRRIGATION IN KARNATAKA

The artificial supply of water for agriculture is called irrigation. It is essential for the development of agriculture in places where the distribution of rainfall is uneven and irregular. It has been an ancient practice in Karnataka to carry on farming through the different sources of irrigation. The main sources of irrigation are wells, canals and tanks. In early days wells were dug in villages for the purpose of irrigation. Later, the practice of constructing canals to supply water from rivers for farming was started. Big tanks can be seen even now. For example : Shantisagar (Sulekere) in Davanagere district. The wells dug in Kalaburagi district during the 11th century, the Tungabhadra canals of the time of Vijayanagar empire, Vanivilasagar and the Krishnarajasagar dam constructed by the Mysuru kings are milestones in the development of the irrigation in Karnataka. At present, both river water and underground water are used for irrigation. Nearly 26.2 % of the cultivable land is under irrigation facility in Karnataka. Karnataka has occupies the 9th position in India with regard to irrigation.



Irrigation area in percentage

Do you know this?

The first large dam in Karnataka was constructed at Vanivilas Sagar near Hiriya in 1907. This was as Marikanive plan.

Raichur district has the largest area under canal irrigation in the state. Tank irrigation is maximum in Shivamogga district, whereas Belagavi district has the maximum well irrigation facilities. In recent times, the number of tube wells has increased. When the land under irrigation is taken into consideration, Belagavi district occupies the first position. In contrast Kodagu district occupies the last position.

The main canal irrigation projects of the state are: Krishnarajasagar, Tungabhadra, Hemavati, Kabini, Harangi, Vanivilas Sagar (Marikanive), Upper Krishna, Almatti, Narayanapura, Malaprabha, Karanja, Bennetore, Hipparagi Barrage, Bhadra projects etc.

Hydro-electric power :

The credit for successful generation of hydro-electric power for the first time in India goes to Karnataka. Coal or petroleum are not available in our state. But there is a great opportunity for the generation of hydel power. There are rivers which can provide sufficient power for the whole state. Rivers flowing towards the west are most suitable for power generation than the rivers flowing towards the east.

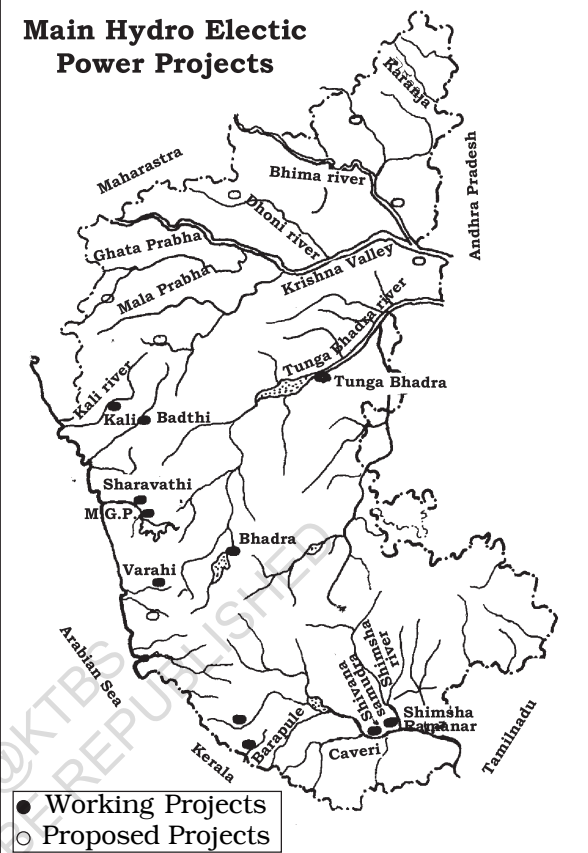
The hydro-electric power station at Shivanasamudra was established in 1902 to supply power to the Kolar gold mines. This project was across constructed on river

Cauvery. At a short distance away from it the second hydro power station was established on Shimsha river in 1940. The Mahatma Gandhi hydro-electric power station was established in 1947 near Jog Falls on Sharavathi river to fulfil the increased demand for hydro electric power. Later, many more hydel projects were developed under the Five Year Plans. As a result of these developments, Karnataka ranks first in the generation of hydro-electric power in India.

The main hydro-electric power projects of Karnataka :

Shivanasamudra, Shimsha (on Cauvery river), Sharavathi, Linganamakki, Gerusoppa and Mahatma Gandhi hydro power station (on Sharavathi river), Supa, Nagajhari, Kadra and Kodasalli (on Kali river), Varahi and MariKanive (on Varahi river), Bhadra, Tungabhadra, Ghataprabha and Alamatti (on Krishna river).

Main Hydro Electric Power Projects



River water disputes

Many rivers in India flow through more than one state. This has given rise to disputes regarding the use of river water. The Cauvery water dispute and the Krishna water disputes in Karnataka are of this kind. The catchment area of the river Cauvery is spread in Karnataka, Tamil Nadu, Kerala and Puducherry. The river water dispute between Karnataka and Tamil Nadu is more than a century old, yet it is a burning issue even today. The river Krishna too flows through different states, Maharashtra, Karnataka and Andhra Pradesh. This has given rise to river water dispute.

EXERCISES

I. Fill in the blanks with suitable words

1. The Cauvery river takes its birth at _____ of Kodagu district.
2. The famous Jog Falls is produced by the _____ river.
3. The Krishnarajasagar dam is in _____ district.
4. The first hydro-electric power generating station in Karnataka is _____.
5. The Almatti dam has been constructed across _____ river.

II. Discuss in groups and answer the following questions.

1. Name the important rivers of Karnataka.
2. Write a short note on river Krishna.
3. What are the tributaries of Cauvery river.
4. Name the different sources of irrigation in Karnataka.
5. Mention the main hydro-electric power stations of our state.
6. Write a brief note on river water disputes.

IV. Match the following :

A

1. Linganamakki dam
2. Gaganachukki, Bharachukki
3. Vani Vilas Sagar
4. Nagajhari
5. Pennar

B

- a. Hydro-electric project
- b. River
- c. Kali river
- d. Cauvery river
- e. Sharavathi
- f. Marikanive

IV. Activities :

1. Make a list of the rivers in Karnataka and their tributaries.
2. Make a list of the important hydro-electric power stations of Karnataka.

V. Project :

1. Mark the dams of Karnataka on a map and name them.
2. Visit any tank, canal, stream or river, coast which are near your dwelling and write about their important features.

LAND RESOURCES OF KARNATAKA

We learn about the following in this chapter,

- the pattern of land use in Karnataka.
- the importance and types of farming.
- understand the distribution of the important crops of Karnataka and their production.

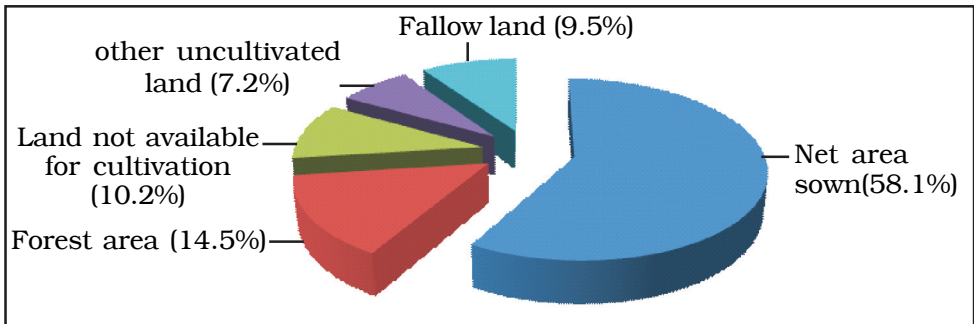
Karnataka is geographically well placed. It has varied physical features, soil, vegetation, minerals, water and ground water resources. Land is the most important natural resources. Its proper use enables the state's development.

Land Utilisation

Use of land for various purposes is called 'land utilisation'. Under this title are included cultivable land, forest area, fallow land, land for residential purposes, for the construction of roadways, railways, dams, canals, barren land, land used for grazing purposes etc. Proper utilization of land is the foundation for economic development.

Pattern of land utilization in Karnataka

1. Net area sown : The distribution of net area sown is not the same all over the state. Gulbarga district has the largest area under cultivable land in the state. It is followed by Belagavi, Vijayapura, Tumakuru, Raichur, Bagalkot, Ballari, Chitradurga and Mysuru districts. Bengaluru district has the least net area sown, due to wide-spread urbanization. Uttara Kannada, Dakshina Kannada, Udupi and Kodagu have less cultivable land.



Percentage of different kinds of land use

2. Forest area : Uttara Kannada district has large forest area. Shivamogga, Chamarajanagar, Chikkamagaluru, Kodagu, Belagavi, Dakshina Kannada, Udupi and Ballari districts also have sufficiently large forest areas. However, Vijayapura has the least forested area. Even Bengaluru, Bengaluru Rural, Raichur, Bidar and Gadag districts have less forest area.

3. Land not available for cultivation : This land is not used for cultivation but for other purposes like rail routes, roads, residences, industry and irrigation projects. In recent times, use of land for such developmental purposes is increasing. Bengaluru Urban district in first place is given for such purposes. It is followed by Shivamogga, Tumakuru, Belagavi, Ballari, Mysuru and Dhakshina Kannada districts. It is the least in Bidar district. It is moderate in the other districts.

4. Other uncultivated land : This land use consists of permanent grazing land, trees and grooves. It is found largely in Shivamogga, Tumakuru, Kolar, Chikkamagaluru and Chitradurga districts. It is least in Gadag, Bagalkot and Dharwad district. Such land can be reclaimed and used for agriculture.

5. Fallow land : Land which has not been cultivated for more than two or three years is called fallow land. Kalaburagi district has the largest area as fallow land. It is followed by Raichur, Belagavi, Vijayapura, Koppal and Tumakuru districts. There is very little fallow land in Chikkamagaluru, Kodagu, Mysuru, Uttar Kannada and Udupi districts. However, such land areas have increased in these districts. Such land also can be reclaimed and utilised for agriculture.

AGRICULTURE

The cultivation of the land for raising crops is called agriculture. Animal husbandry, poultry, bee-keeping, and sericulture are included under agriculture. Nearly 61.4% of the people in Karnataka are in rural areas and they depend on agriculture for their livelihood.

Importance : Agriculture is one of the ancient, primary occupations of Karnataka. It is the main source of livelihood for many. It is the backbone of our state's economy. Economic progress depends on agriculture. Agriculture provides employment to people. It also provides food for the people and raw materials to industries. It is a

source of revenue to the state and to earn foreign exchange. Coffee, silk, spices, tobacco, cotton etc are the agricultural products which are exported. Agriculture helps in the development of tertiary occupations like transport, banking, insurance etc. It plays an important role in the political and social systems of the state.

Types of cultivation : Different kinds of crops are grown according to the size of the land holding, land fertility, availability of water, amount of rainfall, climate, physical features, market facilities etc., The types of cultivation are classified according to these factors. They are subsistence farming, irrigation farming, dry farming, mixed farming, shifting cultivation, commercial farming, plantation farming etc.

Crops grown by using water from canals, tanks or wells is called 'irrigation'. Paddy and sugarcane are the main crops grown under this farming. Cultivation of crops which depend on rain is called dry farming, for example : ragi, jowar, oil seeds etc.

The cultivation of a few annual crops on large estates for the purpose of earning money is called plantation farming, for example; coffee, tea, rubber, cocoa etc. Crops that are grown not for the domestic market but also for the international market come under commercial farming, for example: tobacco, cotton, jute etc. The crops which are grown by the farmers for home consumption and not for the market is called subsistence farming. This is an ancient type of cultivation.

Nowadays, a mixed type of farming is gaining popularity. In addition to growing crops, dairy farming, silkworm rearing, sheep rearing, poultry, bee-keeping, fishery etc. are taken up and it is called mixed farming.

The major crops of Karnataka

Just like different types of farming, there are different types of crops in Karnataka. The main responsible for this are: soil, climatic conditions, relief features, irrigation facility, traditions of

Speciality of Crops

Narjanagud	- Rasabale
Byadagi	- Chillies
Tiptur	- Coconut
Mysuru	- Betel
Bengaluru	- Blue grapes
Devanahalli	- Pomelo
Erangere	- Brinjal
Nippani	- Tobacco

the farmers and market for the agricultural produce etc. The crops of Karnataka can be classified as follows : Food crops – paddy, ragi, maize, pulses, millets, Commercial crops – sugarcane, cotton, tobacco, mulberry. Oilseeds-groundnut, ningerseed, sesame, sunflower etc. Plantation crops – coffee, coconut, arecanut, rubber, banana etc.

In addition to these different types of horticultural crops and floriculture are there. Now let us study about the major crops of Karnataka.

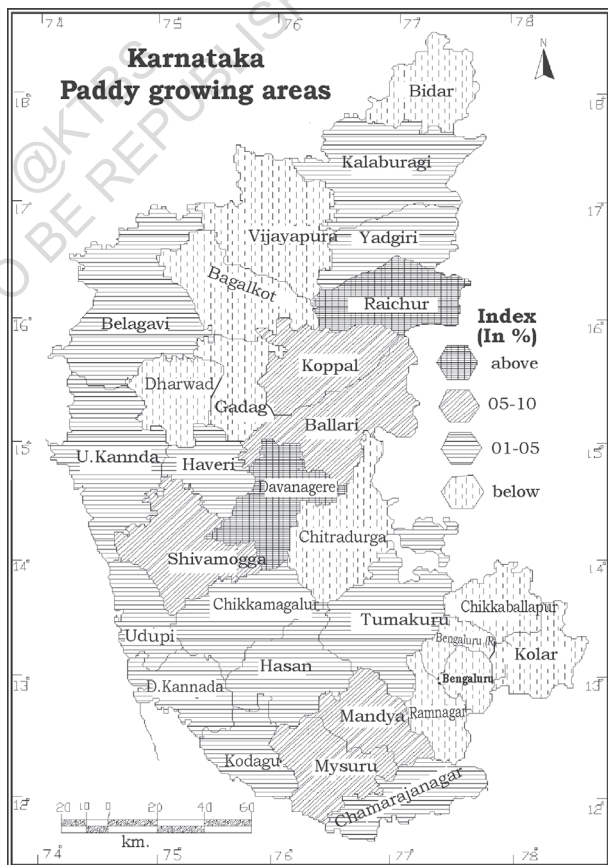
FOOD CROPS

1. Paddy : Paddy is a very important food crop of Karnataka. Rice is the staple food of the people of Karnataka. Paddy is grown in 28.2% of the total cultivable land. Irrigation facility, use of chemical fertilizers and high-yielding hybrid seeds have resulted improvement in the yield of paddy.

Paddy is a tropical crop. Cultivation of paddy requires heavy rainfall and high temperature. Areas having scanty rainfall need irrigation facility for the growing of paddy. Cultivation of paddy requires level land. Fertile clayey and alluvial soils are ideal for paddy cultivation. Organic manure, leaves of trees and abundant labourers are required for the cultivation of paddy. Nearly 70% of paddy is sown during June - August months, and harvested

Do you know this ?

Paddy is a plant of the grass family 'poyaceae'. Its scientific name is oryza sativa.



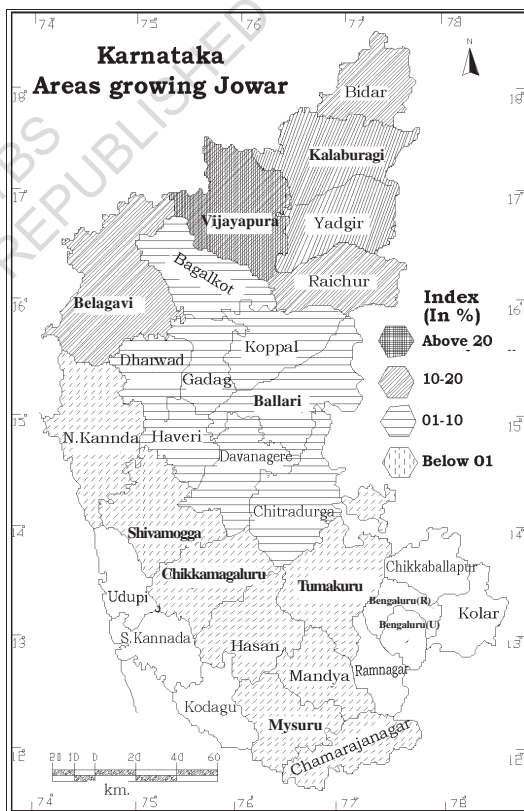
during November-December. It is a kharif crop. Even in summer, paddy is grown in areas where irrigation facility is available (February - June). This is called rabi crop. In Malnad, paddy is grown by broadcasting method and in the plains by transplanting method.

Paddy Growing areas : Paddy is grown in all the districts of Karnataka. The Krishna – Tungabhadra valley, Cauvery valley and the coastal districts are famous for paddy cultivation. Raichur district stands first in the production of paddy. Next come Ballari, Shivamogga, Davangere, Mysuru, Mandya, Koppal, Uttara Kannada, Udupi, Dakshina Kannada and Kalaburagi. The other paddy growing areas of Karnataka are Tumakuru, Hassan, Chikkamagaluru, Kodagu and Belagavi. The yield and quality of paddy is better in irrigated areas.

2. Jowar : This is second most important crop in Karnataka after paddy. Until recently, the area under jowar cultivation was more than that of paddy. But in recent years it has decreased. The total area under jowar cultivation is 26 % of the cultivable area. Karnataka ranks second after Maharashtra in the production of jowar in India.

Jowar is the staple food of the people of North Karnataka. It is mainly used for preparing rotis. The stalks of jowar plant are used as cattle fodder. In South Karnataka jowar is primarily grown for cattlefeed.

This crop also belongs to the grass family. Its botanical name is 'Sorghum vulgare'. It is a tropical crop, requiring moderate rainfall and moderate temperature. Mixed black and red soil and alluvial soil are suitable for jowar. It is a rain-



fed crop and grown by using broadcasting method. It depends on the South-West Monsoons.

Do you know this :

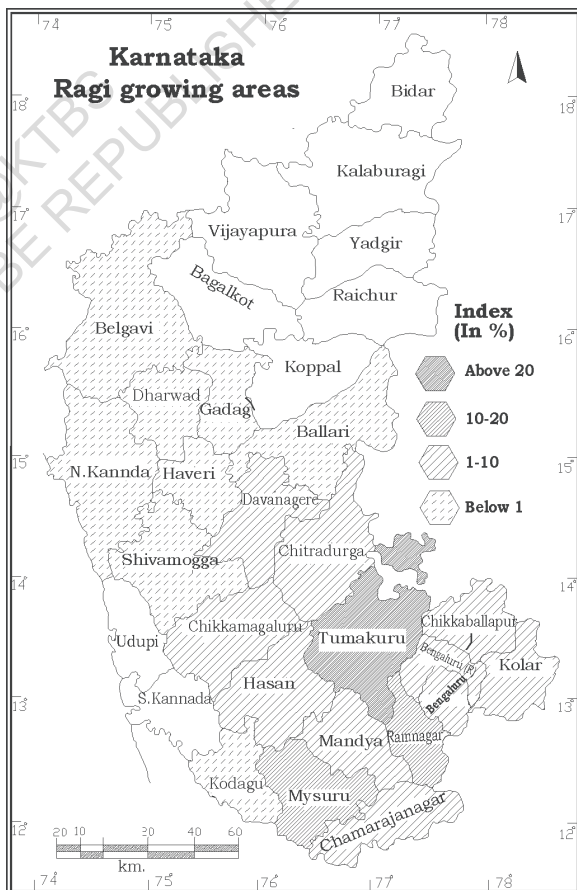
Kalaburagi is the granary of Togari (Toor).

Growing areas : Except for a few districts of South Karnataka, all other districts grow jowar. Vijayapura, Kalaburagi, Bagalkot, Raichur, Belagavi, Bidar, Ballari, Davangere, Koppal and Gadag are the leading producers of jowar. Vijayapura stands first in the production of jowar in the state. Chitradurga, Shivamogga, Chamarajnagar, Hassan, Tumakuru and Mandya districts are also produce jowar.

3) Ragi : This is a very nutritive food grain. Its botanical name is 'Eleusine Coracana'. Ragi balls, porridge, sprouted flour, malt, dosa etc. are made from ragi. In Karnataka it is the third most important food grain after paddy and jowar. It is cheap grain. The stalks of the ragi plant are used as fodder for cattle. Ragi can be preserved for many months.

Ragi is a tropical crop. High temperature, moderate rainfall, red sandy and loamy soil are suitable for this crop. It can withstand very severe droughts. In some places, ragi is grow by using irrigation facility. Many labourers are needed to transplant ragi sapplings, Pull out the weeds to harvest and store ragi. It is an important Kharif crop. It can be grown even during summer season by using irrigation.

Growing areas : Karnataka stands first in the production of ragi in India. However, the use of ragi has reduced. Ragi is grown in 14% of the total



cultivable land. The ragi-growing areas are concentrated in the districts of southern maidan. Ragi is a traditional crop of Old Mysore province. Jowar is the main crop in North Karnataka, where as ragi is the main crop in South Karnataka. Tumakuru is the leading producer of ragi. Then come Ramnagar, Bengaluru Rural, Hassan, Mandya, Kolar, Chikballapur, Shivamogga, Chikkamagaluru, Chamarajnagar and Davanagere districts.

COMMERCIAL CROPS

1) Sugarcane : Sugarcane is the most important commercial and industrial crop of Karnataka. Karnataka ranks fourth in the production of sugarcane. Sugarcane is a tropical crop. It is grown in areas with high temperature and heavy rainfall or good irrigation facility. Sandy loamy soil and red soil are suitable for the cultivation of sugarcane. Since sugarcane has to be transported to the factories as soon as it is harvested, there has to be good transport facility.

Activity

List out the food crops and commercial crops grown in your district.

Sugarcane belongs to the grass family. It grows to a height of three metres. Its botanical name is "Saccharum Officinarum". It contains sucrose and it is used to produce jaggery and sugar. Being an annual crop sugarcane requires irrigation facility.

Growing areas : Belagavi is the leading producer of sugarcane in Karnataka and followed by Bagalkot which has irrigation facility from the Almatti project. Mandya, Mysuru, Shivamogga, Davanagere, Hassan, Koppal, Vijayapura, Bidar, Ballari and Haveri are the other important sugarcane-growing areas.

Mandya district has specialised in the cultivation of sugarcane even from pre-independence days.

2) Cotton : Cotton is a fibre crop. It provides raw material for cotton textiles. Besides, it is used for making carpets, beds and pillows. Cooking oil is produced from cotton seeds. Cotton seed cake is used as cattle feed.

Cotton is a crop of the tropics and the sub-tropics. Moderate rainfall, high temperature and black soil are suitable for its growth. Cotton has been used for a long time in daily life in Karnataka. Long, medium and short staple cotton are the different varieties of cotton. Karnataka grows more of medium and short staple cotton. Cotton is a kharif crop. It is sown in August-September. It is a rain-fed crop. It can also be grown with the help of irrigation facility.

Growing areas : The main cotton-producing districts of Karnataka are Haveri, Dharwad, Gadag, Mysuru, Ballari, Raichur, Kalaburagi, Belagavi, Davanagere, Chitradurga, Koppal and Vijayapura. Among these, Haveri district ranks first in the production of cotton in the state. Dharwad district ranks second.

Nowadays, areas growing cotton are dwindling. Pests and diseases have become major problems. As a result the development of disease-tolerant and high yield varieties of cotton by the Agricultural Research Institute. There is improvement in the yield production of cotton.

3) Tobacco : It belongs to the nicotiana group. It contains an intoxicating substance called nicotine. Tobacco is used in the manufacture of beedis, cigarettes, cigar and snuff. The Portuguese introduced tobacco in the 17th century in India. Subsequently, people started growing it in Karnataka. Presently, it is a major commercial crop in the state. It can be grown in areas with moderate rainfall and high temperature in loamy soil.

Karnataka grows virginia tobacco, beedi tobacco and chewing tobacco. Virginia tobacco is highest quality and is in great demand in the global market. It is grown widely in Karnataka. It earns valuable foreign exchange and revenue for the state exchequer.

Growing areas : Karnataka ranks fourth among the tobacco-growing states in India. Mysore district occupies the first position in the production of tobacco. It is also grown in the districts of Hassan, Shivamogga, Kodagu, Belagavi, Ballari, Chitradurga, Raichur, Davanagere, Tumakuru and Gadag. Nippani in Belagavi district is very famous for its beedi tobacco marketing. Tobacco grown in Karnataka is of a world-class, and most of it is exported.

4) Coffee : Coffee is Karnataka's famous plantation and beverage crop. Karnataka ranks first in the production of coffee in India. A Muslim Fakir (priest) named Bababudan planted coffee saplings for the first time around 1670 A.D. in the hills of Chikkamagaluru. Hence those hills are called Bababudangiri. However, organized cultivation of coffee began under the British rule in 1826, and today vast coffee estates can be seen in Karnataka.

Activity

Invite the farmers to your school. Conduct a discussion on methods of cultivation and marketing of the crops which they have grown.

Karnataka produces two types of coffee namely Coffee Arabica and coffee Robusta. Of these Arabica is of better quality and enjoys a great demand in the international market. Coffee is a tropical crop which can grow well on the slopes of hills, with heavy rainfall. Clay mixed soil is suitable for this crop. Coffee plant cannot withstand the direct rays of the sun. Hence shady trees are grown in estates. Coffee is mainly grown in the Malnad region which has all the conditions required for growing it.

Activity :

Collect more information regarding organic farming.

Coffee growing areas : Karnataka has a share of 70% of the coffee produced in India. It is grown largely in Kodagu district. After Kodagu, Chikkamagaluru and Hassan are important for coffee growing. It is grown to a small extent in Shivamogga, Chamaraajnagar and Dakshina Kannada district.

Coffee grown in Karnataka is good in quality. Hence it enjoys great demand both in the national and international markets. That is why Karnataka is known as 'The Land of Coffee'.

EXERCISES

I. Fill in the blanks with suitable words.

1. Utilising land for different purposes is called _____.
2. _____ district has the largest net area sown.

3. Sorghum vulgare is the scientific name of _____ crop.
4. The _____ district is the largest producer of sugarcane in Karnataka.
5. Tobacco contains an intoxicating substance called _____.

II. Discuss in groups and answer the following questions.

1. Name the different types of land utilization in Karnataka.
2. Write a note on the importance of agriculture in Karnataka.
3. What is meant by 'irrigation'? Name the main crops grown under irrigation.
4. Explain the main characteristics of 'mixed farming'?
5. Mention the uses of ragi.

III. Match the following.

A

1. Coffee
2. Cotton
3. Sugarcane
4. Nippani
5. Sheep-rearing

B

- a. Mixed farming
- b. Beverage crop
- c. Tobacco
- d. Fibres crop
- e. Plantation crop
- f. Commercial crop

V. Activities.

1. Collect samples of the various kinds of foodgrains and pulses grown in Karnataka.
2. On a map of Karnataka mark the areas where jowar, ragi and other foodgrains are grown .

VI. Project.

1. Note down the names of the crops grown in the surrounding areas of your place. Collect of the same pictures.

MINERAL RESOURCES

We learn about the following in this chapter,

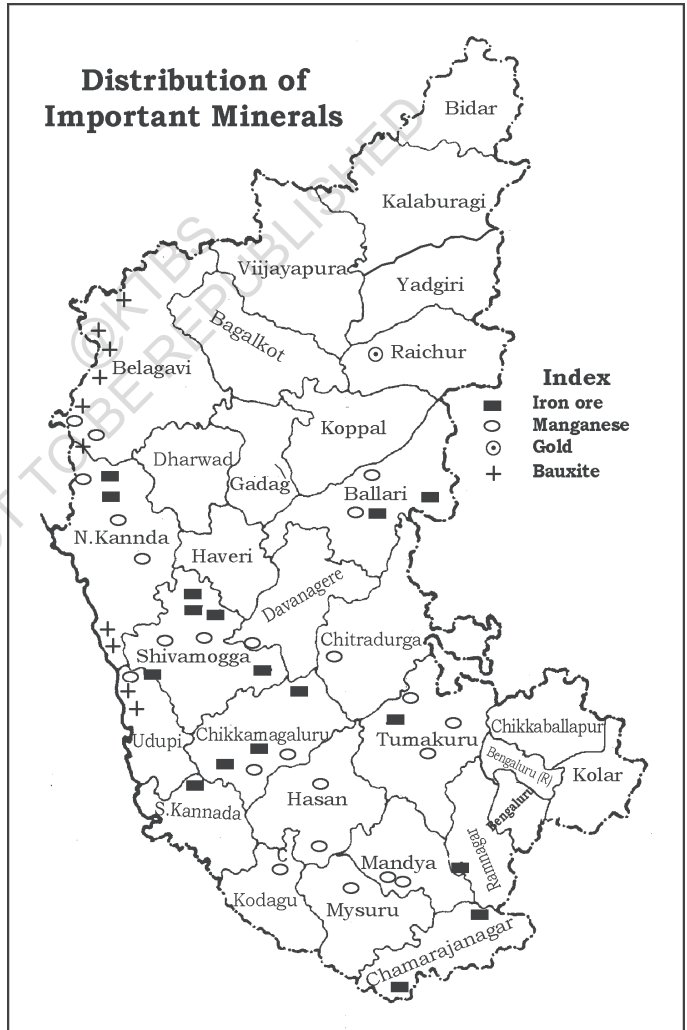
- the minerals available in Karnataka and their importance.
- understand the distribution and production of important minerals in Karnataka.

The mineral resources play a significant role in the economic development of the state country. Karnataka has rich and varied mineral resources. Among them, iron ore, gold, manganese, lime stone, copper, bauxite, chromite, mica, asbestos and granite are the important minerals. Let us study about them.

Iron ore

Iron ore is the raw material for iron and steel industry. Karnataka has vast reserves of magnetite and haematite grade iron ore. Karnataka stands next to Odisha in the production of iron ore in India. There are 75 working iron ore mines in the state. High grade magnetite ore contributes 63% of the iron ore produced in our state. The rest is haematite ore.

Distribution of Important Minerals



Distribution : Iron ore is mainly distributed in the districts of Ballari, Chikkamagaluru, Bagalkot, Chitradurga, Tumakuru, Shivamogga, Dakshina Kannada, Uttara Kannada and Gadag. Ballari has rich deposits and they are mainly found in Hospet and Sandur areas. Iron ore is extracted at Donimalai, Vibhutigudda, Belagala, Kumaraswamy Hills, Timmappana Gudi, Devadri range and Ramadurga Hills.

Chikkamagaluru district occupies the second position. Iron ore is found in Bababudangiri hills, Kemmannugundi, Kudremukh, Gangamula, Kalhattagiri and Jenusuri hillocks. With a view to protecting bio-diversity, the Supreme Court has ordered mining to be stopped at Kudremukh which has a National Park. There are iron ore deposits in Hosadurga and Sasalu of Chitradurga district, Ameengadh of Bagalkot district, Huliyaara and Chikkanayakanahalli of Tumakuru district, Kumsi, Shankaragudda and Siddarahalli of Shivamogga district etc.

Activity

Listout the minerals available in your district.

The iron ore produced in the state is supplied to the iron and steel factory at Bhadravati and the Jindal Vijayanagar Iron and Steel factory near Ballari. The rest is exported.

Manganese

Manganese ore is mainly found in oxide form in sedimentary and metamorphic rocks. It is used as an alloy in the manufacture of steel to increase its hardness. It is also used in the manufacture of chemicals, electrical industry, chemical fertilizers, calico printing and paints. Hence it is known as 'the jack of all trades'.

Distribution : Deposits of manganese ore are plenty in Karnataka, and accounts for about 27% of the total deposits in the country. Karnataka ranks second after Odisha in the production of manganese.

The distribution of manganese is found in the areas where iron ore is found. Sandur in Bellary district is an important producer of manganese. It produces about 90% of the manganese ore of the state. The other main manganese ore mining centers are Kumsi, Shankaragudda and Hosahalli in Shivamogga district, Sadarahalli in Chitradurga district, Chikkanayakanahalli in Tumakuru district, Sirasi taluk, Supa, Londa, Uscanda in Uttara Kannada district, and

the districts of Dharwad, Vijayapura and Chikkamagaluru. A major portion of the state's manganese production is exported to Japan, China and other countries.

Bauxite

Bauxite ore is mostly used in the preparation of aluminium. It is also used in the manufacture of cement, steel and electric wires. Hence its demand is increasing.

Distribution : Deposits of bauxite ore in Karnataka are found in the districts of Belgavi, Chikkamagaluru, Chitradurga, Dakshina Kannada and Udupi. Belgavi district is the leading bauxite-producing district. There are bauxite mines in Belgavi and Khanapur taluks. This ore is used in the Indian Aluminium Company factory at Belgavi.

Gold

Gold is a very rare, glittering and durable yellow metal. It is used for making ornaments, and in the manufacture of valuable articles like watches etc. Recently the use and the demand for gold has increased, its price has also sky-rocketed.

Karnataka occupies the first position in the production of gold in India. It produces 80% of the total gold in India. Hence Karnataka is known as the 'Land of Gold'. Gold is mined in Karnataka from ancient times. However, gold mining was begun on a large scale in 1880 by John Taylor, and this is the reason for the establishment of K.G.F. in 1885. There are four important mines in the Kolar Gold Fields. They are Nandidurg, Urigaum, Champion Reef and Mysore Mines. Among these, Champion Reef is the deepest gold mine (3217 mtrs.). The gold deposits in these mines is almost exhausted due to continuous mining for many years. Now they are not working. But mining continues at Hutti mines.

At present, Hutti in Raichur district is the biggest gold mine in India. Lots of gold is produced here. Gold is also produced in Bellara in Tumakuru district and Ajjanahalli near Sira. Other places with gold deposits are Mulgund and Kappatagudda in Gadag district, Kempinakote in Hassan district etc.

EXERCISES

I. Fill in the blanks with suitable words.

1. Kudremukh in Karnataka is noted for _____ ore .
2. The best-quality iron ore is _____.
3. Sandur in Ballari district has _____ mines.
4. The metal that is produced from bauxite ore is _____.
5. The deepest gold mine is _____.

II. Discuss in groups and answer the following questions.

1. Why is Karnataka called the 'Land of Gold'?
2. Which are the important minerals available in Karnataka?
3. Which is the ore used as an alloy?
4. Name the places in Karnataka where iron ore is available.
5. Which district is an important producer of bauxite ?
6. Name the important gold mines of Karnataka.

III. Match the following.

A

1. Supa
2. Hatti
3. Kumsi
4. Khanapur

B

- a. Manganese
- b. Bauxite
- c. Limestone
- d. Iron ore
- e. Gold mine

V. Activities.

1. Collect samples and write an account of the minerals available in Karnataka.
2. On a map of Karnataka mark and name the where minerals are found.

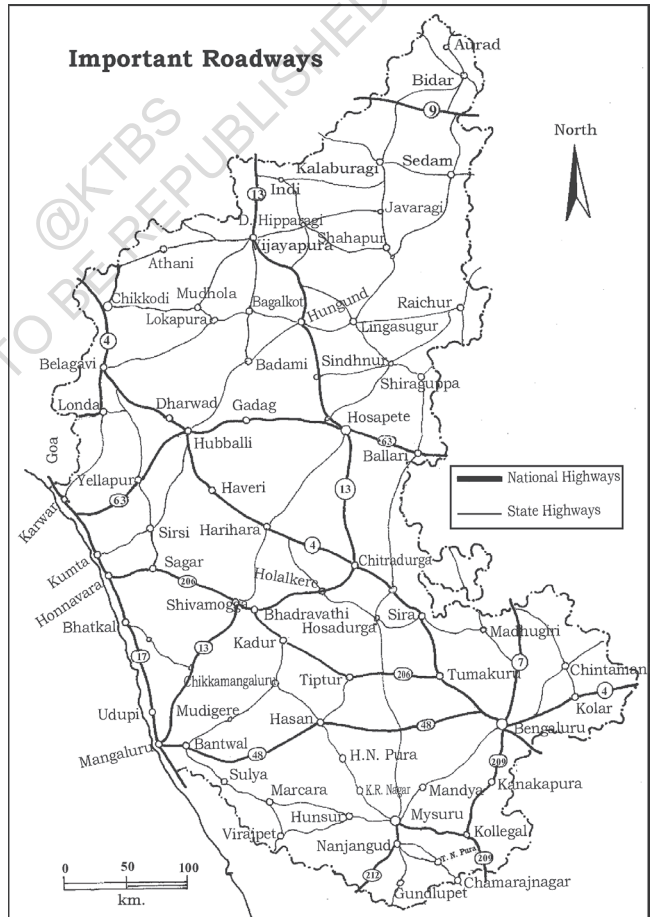
CHAPTER - 7

TRANSPORT

We learn about the following in this chapter,

- the importance of the medium of transport in Karnataka.
- road transport – types and the important highways.
- the importance of railways and the important rail routes.
- the water transport and air transport.

Transport refers to the system of carrying persons and goods from one place to another. It is the life line in the progress of agriculture, industry and commerce. Karnataka is a land with varied natural resources. Minerals, commercial crops, forest products and sources of energy are available here. In order to achieve economic development through proper use of these resources, an efficient transport system is essential. Karnataka is primarily an agricultural state. Different means of transport facilities are necessary to transport food grains and other agricultural produce, to the market, minerals from mines, manufactured goods from the factories, people from one place to another and for various other purposes. Karnataka has well-developed road, rail, water and air transport facilities.



ROAD TRANSPORT

Importance : A large number of people live in rural areas in Karnataka. So, road transport occupies a very important role in linking the villages and towns. Roads can be constructed easily, at low cost. People and goods can be transported to every corner of the state. Development of roads determines the progress of the state's agriculture, industry, mining and commerce.

Development of road transport : Road transport has been in use from ancient times in Karnataka. Kings and emperors constructed roads for the use of their soldiers and for administrative purposes. There were travel shelters (where a place to rest, and water to drink were available), resting shelters, orchards and choultries. Roads to connect the coastal regions to the inland areas had been constructed.

However, roads were not much developed in the pre-independence days in Karnataka. There were roads linking Bengaluru and the district centers in the old Mysuru province, but they were not well-organized. After independence when the Vishala Mysuru State was formed in 1961, totally 43,182 kms of roads were laid. At present, the total length of the roads is 2,31,062 kms. Of which, 35.70% are metalled (asphalted) roads whereas 64.30% are unmetalled roads. There has been an improvement in the quality of roads constructed too.

Try this :

Make a Lists of the National highways that pass through your district and list the names of the taluks through which they pass.

Kinds of roads : Roads in Karnataka have been classified into four kinds. They are: 1. National highways, 2. State highways, 3. District roads and 4. Village roads.

1. National highways : Roads which link important cities, capitals of states and ports are called National highways. These are well-planned wide roads and are two- lane, four- lane and six- lane roads. They are under the authority of the Central Government, and are managed by the 'National Highways Authority of India' (NHAI). At present, there are 14 national highways in Karnataka. Their total length is 4491 kms. They have not been located equally among all the districts of the state. Uttara Kannada, Vijayapura, Belagavi,

Shivamogga, Bengaluru Rural, Tumakuru, Dakshina Kannada and Ballari districts have more National highways. Raichur and Kodagu districts have no National highways.

National highway NH-4 and NH-7 come under the National Highway Authority's 'Golden Quadrilateral Highway Project' as well as 'Corridor Project'. They have six lanes. The other main National highways passing through the state are NH-206, NH-209, NH-212 NH-13, NH-17, NH-48.

NH-13 is the longest national highway of Karnataka

From Mangalore it enters Mudabidri, passes through Koppa, Shivamogga, Chitradurga, Hosapete, Ilkal, Vijayapura and reaches Solapur.

2. State Highways : Roads which link the capital city of Bengaluru with district headquarters, major towns and other highways are called State Highways. The construction and maintenance of these roads rests with the State Government. Karnataka has 20,905 kms of state highways. Belagavi has the longest state highway whereas Bengaluru has the least.

3. District Roads : Roads which link district headquarters with taluk headquarters, major towns, villages, railways and major highways are called District roads. The construction, maintenance and supervision of these roads is under the Zilla Parishat. Karnataka state has 47,836 kms of district highways. Tumakuru district has maximum district highways, and Raichur has the least.

4. Village roads : Roads which link taluk headquarters with village and district highways are called Village roads. The construction and maintenance of these roads is under the taluk panchayat and village panchayat. The quality of these roads is not good, and in some parts, it is very difficult to travel on these roads. Karnataka has 1,47,212 kms of village roads.

In addition to the types of roads mentioned above, there are multi-purpose roads and roads under local administration. For instance, Roads of Public Works Department, Forest Department, Irrigation Department and Town Municipality and City Corporation.

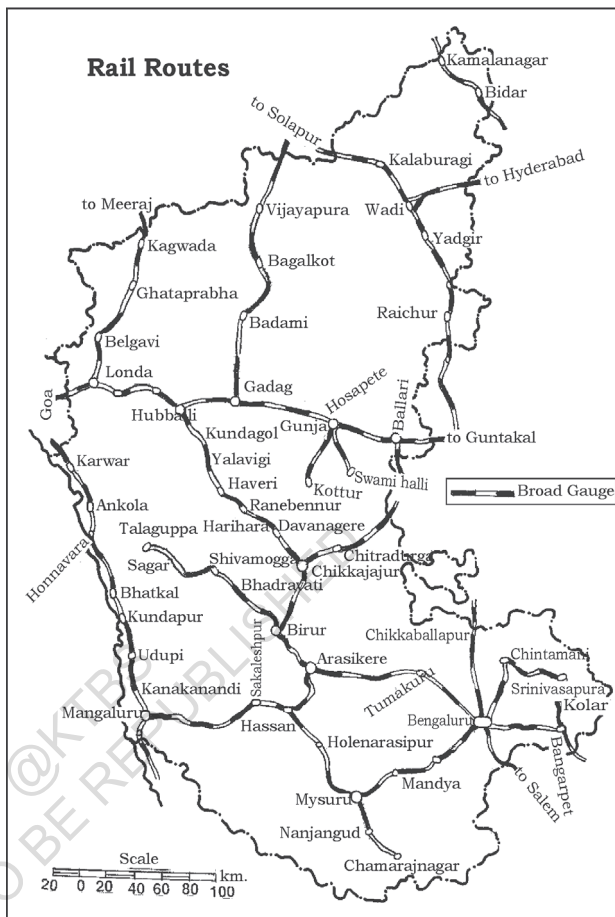
RAILWAYS

In Karnataka, railway is the second most important mode of transport next to roadways. It helps in economical travel to distant places and transportation of goods.

The first railway line in the state was opened for traffic in- 1864. This was laid between Bengaluru and Madras by the Madras Railway Company. By the year 1956, the state had totally 2595 kms of railway track belonging to the Southern Railway Zone. Now, the South-Western Railways Zone has come into existence with its administrative center at Hubballi. Today, Karnataka has 3244 kms of railway track.

In Karnataka state, there is no uniform distribution of railway tracks in all the districts. Bengaluru, Ballari, Belagavi, Hassan, Uttara Kannada, Chitradurga, Udupi, Ramnagar and Dakshina Kannada districts have an average of 150 to 200 km long railway track. Kodagu district has no any railway tracks.

Konkan Railways : This is the most important railway route of West Coast. It links Mangaluru and Mumbai, and has reduced the time for travelling from 41 hrs to 18 hrs. Its length is 273 kms with



Activity :

Discuss your experience in road and railway journey. Come to conclusion which journey is better. How ?

13 main and 310 other bridges. Of these, Sharavathi river bridge (2.2kms) the longest bridge and Kali river bridge (1.2 kms) are the important bridges. Since this railway passes through many tunnels and across bridges, one can enjoy the natural beauty and scenery.

Metro Rail : Bengaluru has grown tremendously as a metropolitan city. Transportation has become a major problem. To overcome this problem, Namma Metro Rail Transport Plan is being implemented. On 20th October 2011, the first Metro rail between Byappanahalli and M.G.Road was started. Lakhs of people utilise this facility. It takes much less time to travel from one place to another. Other Metro rail tracks are at different stages of completion.

AIR TRANSPORT

Air transport is the fastest mode of transport. It helps to carry people, mail and lightweight goods to distant places in the shortest time. Air transport is of great help during natural calamities, wars and other emergencies. However, it is the costliest mode of transport and not available to everyone.

The first air travel facility was began between Bengaluru and Hyderabad by 'Deccan Airways' in the year 1946. Indian Airways was nationalized in the year 1953. After Indian Airlines was established, Bengaluru was linked with various places all over the country. In the year 1996 state airport of Bengaluru was declared as a International Airport. Belagavi, Hubballi, Mysuru and Mangaluru have domestic airports. New airports are being established in Hassan and Kalaburagi.

The international airport which was in HAL was shifted to Devenahalli, about 34 kms away, on 24, May 2008. The HAL airport is now being utilized for the training of pilots. The Devenahalli International Airport is the country's first green airport. This airport is well equipped to provide various facilities and is the most modern airport.

WATER TRANSPORT

Karnataka has inland as well as sea waterways. Their availability is limited and so, not very significant in transport. Earlier, the inland waterways were confined to small rowing boats, dingies and rafts. At present, motor boats have come into existence. They are used in Udupi, Uttara Kannada and Dhakshina Kannada districts. These districts have Kali, Sharavathi and Nethravathi rivers which help in inland water transport. Boats are used in some places to cross the Krishna river. With the development of road and railway transport, the use of water transport is limited.

Ports : The coastal places where ships are sheltered are called Ports. Ships are used for fishing, trade, passenger travel and transport of goods. In Karnataka, there are about 23 small and large ports. The Port Development Authority came into being in the year 1957, and there was an expansion in water transport. The New Mangaluru Port was declared the 9th major port of the country on 4th May, 1974. It is called the 'Gateway of Karnataka'. Through this port, iron ore, coffee, spices, cashew, sandalwood, tiles, chromide, granite stone and canned fruit and fish are exported. Petroleum is being imported. In addition to the Mangaluru port, ten smaller ports have been developed. These are Old Mangaluru Port, Malpe, Hangarakatte, Kundapura, Padubidri, Bhatkal, Honnavara, Tadri, Belekeri and Karwar. Of these, Karwar is the most beautiful port. It being an all-weather port, iron ore, manganese, granite and agricultural produces are exported through this port.

EXERCISES

I. Fill in the blanks with suitable words.

1. Villages and towns are linked by _____ transport.
2. There are _____ national highways passing through Karnataka.
3. The city railway system of Bengaluru is called _____.

4. The port that is called the 'Gateway of Karnataka' is _____.
5. The Coastal Railway of Karnataka is called _____.

II. Discuss in groups and answer the following questions.

1. Explain the importance of road transport.
2. Name the different types of roads in Karnataka.
3. List the important rail routes of Karnataka.
4. What are the advantages of air transport?
5. Name the ports of Karnataka.

III. Match the following.

A

1. Golden Quadrilateral
2. Broad gauge
3. H.A.L.
4. Belekeri
5. Namma Metro

B

- a. Port
- b. Bengaluru
- c. NH-4
- d. Airport
- e. Railways
- f. Waterways

IV. Activities.

1. Mark and name the highways passing through Karnataka on a map.

Project.

1. Write a paragraph on your experience of railway journey.
2. Write a note on your local transport system.

INDUSTRIES OF KARNATAKA

We learn about the following in this chapter,

- the importance of the industries of Karnataka.
- the major industrial regions of Karnataka.
- the distribution and production of iron and steel industry.
- cotton textile, sugar, cement and paper industries.
- Bengaluru – India's main information technology industrial center.

Growth of industries plays an important role in the development of any state in the country. Our State has this great opportunity. Due to the presence of abundant mineral resources, raw materials, ideal climate, sufficient water, good transport system, skilled labourers, wide market and modern technology, Karnataka is famous for a variety of industries. The industries range from agriculture-based small scale industries to modern large scale industries.

Sir M.Visveswaraiah's contribution to the development of industries in Karnataka is remarkable. Believing in the motto 'Industrialize or perish', he laid the foundation for many industries in the state. After the hydro-electric power generation station was started at Shivanasamudra in 1902, many industries producing essential goods and products for daily use came into existence. Rice mills, tile factories, beedis and cigarettes, iron and brass foundries were established. After 1923, many modern manufacturing units like iron and steel, soap factories, cotton and silk mills, paper, cement, paint, sugar, sandal oil industries etc were started. In pre-independence era itself, Mysuru province was a model state with respect to industries. The main reason for this was the interest of British and the Mysuru kings took in this matter.

After independence, the industrial policy of the Central Government enabled further industrial development in the state. As a result, many more factories were established, for instance;

manufacture of aeroplanes, engineering, machine tools, (HMT, BEL, BHEL), watches, iron and steel, aluminium, information technology, electronic bio-technology industry etc.

Iron and Steel Industry

Karnataka occupies the pride of place by being the first state in South India to establish an iron and steel factory. Sir M. Visveswaraiah's foresight enabled an Iron and Steel industry to be set up at Bhadravathi in Shivamogga district in 1923. So that the rich and abundant iron ore deposits in the Bababudangiri hills could be utilized. This factory was named as Mysuru Iron and Steel Industries Limited (MSIL). Later on, it was handed over to Steel Authority of India Limited (SAIL) in 1989. Today it is known as Visveswaraiah Iron and Steel Industry (VISL).

The iron ore, necessary this factory is supplied from Kemmannugundi, lime from Bandigudda, water from the Bhadra river and manganese from Sandur. In the beginning, firewood was used for the blast furnace. After the Sharavathi hydro power generating station was established, hydro-electricity began to be used. At present, a special variety of steel and pig iron are produced. Another important iron and steel industry of Karnataka is the private sector-owned Jindal Vijayanagar Steel Limited. It was established in 2001 at Torangal in Ballari district using the latest Corex technology. It produces iron and steel.

Cotton Textile Industry

Cotton textile industry is one of the modern industries established very early in the state. It is an agro-based industry. From ancient times, weaving cloth on hand looms was in practice in Karnataka. It is practiced even now. Although cloth is produced from synthetic yarn, and foreign cotton textiles are available, Indian cotton textiles are in great demand.

The modern cotton mills were established towards the end of the 19th century. Ginning and spinning mills were set up in the northern districts. The first, M.S.K. cotton mill, was set up in 1884 at Kalaburagi. Later, cotton textile factories were started in Hubballi. After 1900, big cotton textile mills were established. Among them,

Binny Mills and Minerva Mills of Bengaluru, K.R. Mill of Mysuru, Cotton Mill of Davanagere etc. were established before independence itself.

After independence, cotton mills were set up in the northern maidan where cotton was widely grown. Davanagere became the state's most important cotton textile industrial centre. It is called 'Manchester of Karnataka'. There are ginning and spinning mills in Hubballi, Ilkal, Guledgudda, Rabakavi, Bagalkot, Molakalmuru, Gadag-Betageri, Badami, Belagavi, Naragund, Gokak, Ballari, Hunsur, Nanjangud, Periyapattana and Chamarajnagar. At present, there are 44 cotton mills in the state. Approximately, 5.1 million mtr's of cotton cloth is produced annually.

Some cotton mills have been closed down more recently. The reasons for this are shortage of cotton, obsolete machines, lack of electricity supply, increasing production costs, stiff competition from synthetic fibre cloth etc.

In order to improve the situation in the textile industry in Karnataka, the State government has formulated a programme 'Suvarna Textile Policy 2008-13', and has established 'Finished Goods Parks' in 11 districts. The purpose of this programme is to export the goods from these industries to foreign countries. Karnataka ranks second in the country with regard to export of textiles. Such parks are in Doddaballapur, Anekal, Belagavi, Mysuru and Ramanagar.

Sugar Industry

The sugar industry is one of Karnataka's important large-scale industries. It is also an agro-based industry. All factors necessary for the development of this industry are favour in the state. Sugarcane production requires humid climate, power supply, local market, transport system etc. This industry plays an important role in the economic development of Karnataka. Sir Francis Buchanan mentions in his writings that in the early part of the 19th century itself, sugar was produced in Palalli (Ashtagrama) of Srirangapatna and Chikkaballapura. Records show that these towns were producing sugar in 1847 and had won prizes in the London Exhibition. The

first modern sugar industry, 'Mysuru Sugar Company' (Mysugar) was established at Mandya in 1933, until 1951, that was the only factory in the state. Now there are 47 sugar factories in the state. Their total annual production is 339 lakh tonnes. Karnataka stands third in the production of sugar in the country.

Do you know :

- Sugar city in Karnataka is Mandya
- Sugar district is Belgavi.

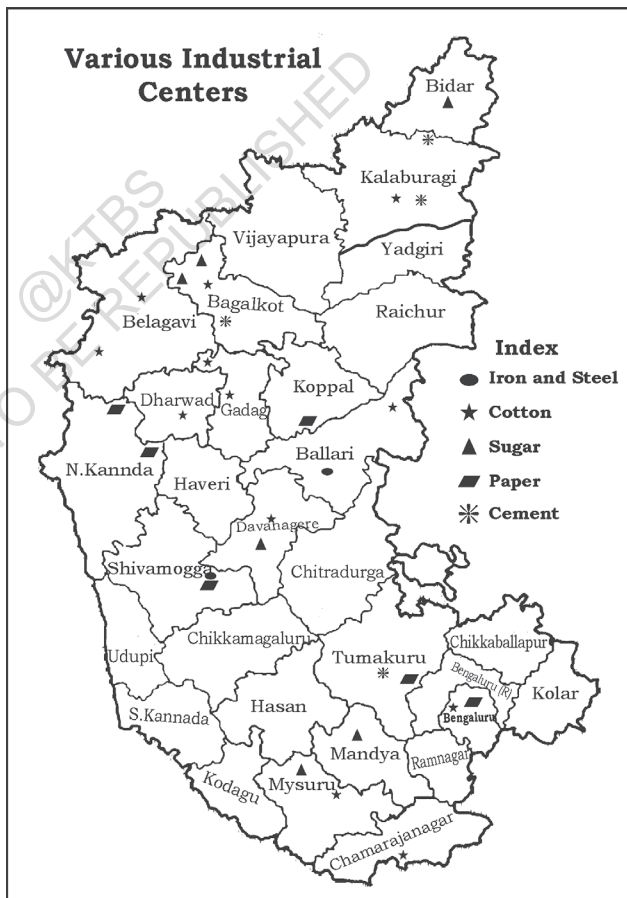
Distribution : The distribution of sugar industry in Karnataka is concentrated in the sugar growing areas, especially the districts in the catchment areas of the Cauvery, Krishna and Tungabhadra rivers. There are more sugar factories in Belagavi and Bagalkot districts. Mandya, Mysuru, Bidar, Vijayapura, Kalaburagi, Ballari and Davangere districts also are significant for sugar industry.

Bagasse and molasses are the by-products of the sugar industry. Bagasse is used for the manufacture of paper and fuel. Molasses are used for production of alcohol.

Paper Industry

Paper is of great importance in the modern world. It is essential for education, printing, newspapers and for propagation of culture. It is a forest based industry. Bamboo, wood pulp, grass, bagasse, cloth rags and waste are used as raw

materials for the manufacture of paper. The first paper mill 'Mysuru Paper Mill Limited' was established in 1936 at Bhadravati. Later a



private company 'West Coast Paper Mill' was started at Dandeli. Bamboo, eucalyptus tree pulp from nearby forests, water from the Kali river and electricity from Jog are supplied to this mill. There are some more paper mills at Nanjangud, Krishnarajanagar, Satyagala, Mundagod, Munirabad, Yediyur and Bengaluru. Karnataka ranks fourth in the production of paper in the country. Karnataka produces 3.6 lakh tonnes of paper products per year.

Cement Industry

Since urbanization and industrialization has increased in Karnataka, the demand for cement in construction activities has also increased. Cement is essential for constructing houses, public buildings, roads, bridges, dams etc.

Limestone which is necessary for the establishment of cement industry, is found in abundance in Karnataka. In addition, gypsum and bauxite are also available. Only coal has to be imported from the neighbouring states. Availability of water, sand, transport, electricity supply, clay and wide market are the other factors favouring the growth of cement industry.

The first cement factory in the state was established at Bhadravathi in 1939. Later, factories were set up at Bagalkot, Ammasandra of Tumakuru district and Shahabad of Kalaburagi district. Other cement producing centres are : Wadi, Lokapura, Ittigehalli, Madakere, Kanchipura, Kaladagi, Kurkunta, Sedam and Chittapura. Karnataka produces 8% of the total cement in the country. At present, it has an annual production capacity of around 121 lakh tonnes.

Activity

Visit a nearby factory, and study how the raw materials are obtained for the factory.

Information Technology Industries

Karnataka is an important centre of information and technology in India. Information and Technological Industries have made great progress here, since there are numerous engineering colleges, research centers, computer based technological courses, an abundance of highly skilled manpower. Therefore many software

industries have been established here. Today Karnataka occupies a very high position in India in this regard.

Bengaluru : India's most important Information Technology Center

Bengaluru City is known as the 'Silicon Valley' (IT-BT City) of India. It is a leading producer and exporter of software components which are used for computer programming. It is one of the world's top-ten major advanced hi-tech cities. Software industry has spread to the suburbs around Bengaluru. This city alone has 1200 IT (Information Technology) and BT (Bio-Technology) industries and provides employment for more than four lakh people. Leading companies from all over the world have established their branches here. The reasons for this are good climate, electricity supply, technical experts, financial assistance, vast market and infrastructure. Bengaluru has emerged as a prestigious advanced information technology centre in India.

Activity

Prepare a list of the different industrial units in your district. Visit a nearby industrial unit and find out what it produces.

There are prestigious companies like Infosys, Wipro etc. in Bengaluru. They have established their branches in different parts of the state. For example : Mysuru, Hubballi, Kalaburagi, Shivamogga, Tumakuru, Mangaluru etc. This industry is more suitable for Human resource, information, appointment, training, etc.

Industrial Regions of Karnataka

Karnataka has been divided into five industrial regions, on the basis of distribution of industries. They are as follows :

1. Bengaluru – Kolar – Tumakuru Industrial region : It has a large number of industries.
2. Belagavi – Dharwar region.
3. Dakshina Kannada and Udupi region.

4. Ballari – Raichur – Koppal Industrial region.
5. Mysuru – Mandya Industrial region.

EXERCISES

I. Fill in the blanks with suitable words.

1. The first Iron and Steel Industry of Karnataka was established at _____.
2. The Manchester of Karnataka is _____.
3. _____ is obtained from sugarcane.
4. _____ industry is in Ammasandra.
5. _____ city is called 'Silicon Valley'.

II. Discuss in groups and answer the following.

1. Write a note on the industrial development in Karnataka.
2. Explain the iron and steel industry of Karnataka.
3. Give an account of the distribution of cotton textile industry in Karnataka.
4. What factors are essential to start sugar industry?
5. Mention the reasons for centralization of information technology industry in Bengaluru?

III. Match the following.

A

1. Dandeli
2. Torangal
3. Molakalmuru
4. Shahabad
5. Infosys

B

- a. Cement
- b. Cotton Textiles
- c. Paper
- d. Computers
- e. Iron and steel

MAJOR TOURIST CENTERS OF KARNATAKA

We learn about the following in this chapter,

- the introduction and importance of natural and cultural tourist centres in Karnataka.
- description of the main tourist centres and their national and international significance.
- Important hills, water falls and historical places.

A Kannada proverb equates “travel with reading and gaining knowledge from an encyclopaedia.” People go to different places from their places to satisfy their curiosity, for religious celebrations for peace of mind for relaxation, to see picturesque places, seeking happiness and for improvement of health. This is called touring. Tourist centres have facilities to stay and eat. So people stay there and visit tourist places.

In the modern world, tourism has become an inevitable part of the human life. We can gain knowledge about the place, culture, civilization, life style etc by tourism.

Karnataka is one of the many states in India which has very famous tourist spots. Karnataka has many natural scenic places, for instance, the evergreen Sahyadri ranges with their rivers, waterfalls, beautiful valleys, wild animals, sandalwood forests etc. The attractive coastlines, historical places, temples with grand sculptures, religious centers, place of pilgrimage etc attract people from the state and foreign countries. Realising the importance of tourism, Karnataka Government has established the ‘Karnataka State Tourism Development Corporation’ (KSTDC) in the year 1974 to provide tourists with basic requirements like tourist homes, lodges and restaurants at important tourist centres.

Karnataka, being a haven for tourists, has various beautiful places and attracts lakhs of people. UNESCO has recognized and declared Hampi, Pattadakal, and recently, the Western Ghats as ‘World

Heritage Sites'. This has made Karnataka world-famous.

The Government of Karnataka has implemented a new tourism policy and given opportunity and encouragement to private companies in tourism. Karnataka has won the award for 'Best Tourism Management' state in 1996-97. The following are the well-known tourist spots :

Hill Stations of Karnataka : Karnataka has a variety of relief features and many hill ranges. Thus, there are many hill stations. Kudremukh hill station of Chikkamagaluru district, is a major hill station. It has dense, green forests, many hillocks, coffee estates and waterfalls making it a beautiful place.

Nandi hill station of Chikballapur district, is about 1492 mtrs above sea level, and has pleasant climate. As it is close to Bengaluru, it attracts lakhs of tourists. It has lodging and boarding facilities. Since Mahatma Gandhi stayed there for the improvement of his health, a Gandhi Bhavan has been constructed in his memory.

Similarly, B.R.Hills, Agumbe Sunset spot, Kemmannugundi, Devarayanadurga, Jogi hills of Chitradurga district, Kodachadri, Himavadgopalaswamy hills, the rocky hillocks of Ramnagar, Madhugiri Monolithic hill, the enchanting rock formations at Yana, Mercara etc. have summer resorts and attract tourists.

Waterfalls of Karnataka : Our state is home to many waterfalls. The Malnad region has many waterfalls. During the rainy season, the water routes down with great force. Uttara Kannada has a greater number of waterfalls.

The highest waterfall in the country is Jog Falls which is in Shivamogga. The water of Sharavathi falls from a height of 293 mtrs in four streams. They are named Raja, Rani, Roarer and Rocket. During the rainy season, this waterfall has maximum amount of water and presents a scene of unforgettable beauty.

The Cauvery river at Shivanasamudra in Mandya district forms twin waterfalls named Gaganachukki and Bharachukki.

Activity

Conduct a school level sight seeing tour and write an account of the important tourist centres of your district.

Near Mercara, there is the refreshing Abbe falls. Near Kemmanagundi hill station, there is Hebbe falls. In addition to these, we have Kalhatagiri falls, Unchalli Falls (called Loushington) Uttara Kannada district and Gokak Falls in Belagavi district. Gokak falls is formed on the river Ghataprabha and is famous as the 'Niagara of Karnataka'. Magod falls is also a famous waterfall.

Wildlife Sanctuaries of Karnataka

Karnataka has dense forests. In order to protect forests and wildlife, the Government of Karnataka has established a number of wildlife sanctuaries, bird sanctuaries, national parks, tiger projects and biosphere reserves areas.

There are five national parks in Karnataka. They are : Rajiv Gandhi National Park in Nagarahole, Bandipur, Bannerughatta, Kudremukh and Anshi National Park.

For the conservation of wild life in their natural habitat, eighteen wildlife sanctuaries have been identified. Of these, Muthodi, Bandipur, Nagarhole, Dandeli, Bhadra animal sanctuaries and Ranganathittu, Kokkare Bellur, Mandagadde, Gudavi bird sanctuary are the main ones.

Let us know this

Every place in our state has its own significance. Learn about the history and significance of our state from your elders.

Karnataka has beautiful beaches. They are: the Om beach of Gokarna, Ullal, Murdeswara, Maravanthe, Malpe beach etc. These attract numerous tourists.

St.Mary's Island near Udupi has special pillar-type rock formation and is very fascinating. Murdeswar's Nethrani Island, Devgad and Kurmagadh islands near Karwar are also famous.

Historical Places : The earlier rulers of Karnataka , the Kadambas, Hoysalas, Chalukyas and the kings of Vijayanagar have left behind very beautiful sculptural wonders. They are at Hampi, Belur, Halebid, Somnathpur, Badami, Pattadakal, Aihole, Gol Gumbuz of Vijayapura, Lakkundi, Banavasi, Basaralu, Belligave, Mysuru, Srirangapatna etc.

Places of Pilgrimage : Karnataka has many pilgrimage centers like Dharmasthala, Udupi, Sringeri, Horanadu, Kollur, Gokarna, Ulavi, Sirsi, Sravanabelagola, Kudala Sangama, Melukote, Adichunchunagiri, Karkala, Devaragudda, Mylarakshetra, Bande Nawaz Darga of Kalaburagi, Ibrahim Roza of Vijayapura, Mallikrahan Darga of Sira, St.Philomena Church in Mysuru, Rosario Cathedral in Mangaluru etc.

Activity :

Collect information about the historical places and temples in your place and near by village.

Forts of Karnataka : There are many historic and strong forts in Karnataka and they are favorite tourist spots, for example : Fort of Bidar, Vijayapura, Kalaburagi, Hampi (Vijayanagar), Keladi, Chitradurga, Madhugiri, Nandi Hills, Pavagada, Manjrabad, Ucchangidurga, Kavaledurga, Parathagadha, Srirangapatna, the coastal forts of Bahadurgadha, Basavarajadurga, Devagadha Kurmagadha etc.

All the mentioned tourist centres above have added to the greatness of Karnataka. In recent days the capital city of Bengaluru is attracting large number of tourists. It has a pleasant climate, wonderful buildings like Vidhana Soudha, beautiful gardens like Lalbagh and Cubbon Park and hence it is called 'Garden City'. It is Karnataka's largest city and one of the megacities of the country. Similarly Mysuru is the 'City of Palaces'. Millions of people visit Mysuru during Dasara festival. Chamundi Hills, K.R.Sagar Dam and Brindavan etc., are the other major tourist attractions of Mysuru.

EXERCISES

I. Fill in the blanks with suitable words.

1. Nandi Hill Station is in _____ district.
2. _____ waterfall is called Niagara of Karnataka.
3. Ibrahim Roza, a pilgrimage is located in _____ city.
4. _____ beach is near Gokarna.
5. _____ city is called the 'City of Palaces'.

II. Answer the following questions.

1. What are the advantages of tourism?
2. Name the basic facilities needed in a tourist spot.
3. Write a note on the Kudremukh hill station.
4. Name the wildlife sanctuaries of Karnataka.
5. Name the places of historical importance in Karnataka.

III. Match the following.

A

1. Biligirirangana hills
2. Jogi Betta
3. Yana
4. Anshi
5. Ranganthittu

B

- a. Uttara Kannada district
- b. Chamarajnagar
- c. Bird sanctuary
- d. Chitradurga
- e. National Park
- f. Peacock sanctuary

IV. Activities.

- 1) Make a list of the hill stations and wild life sanctuaries of Karnataka.
- 2) Write an account of your experiences during your tour of Source of the important tourist spot of Karnataka.

V. Project.

- 1) Collect photographs of various tourist places and prepare an album.

POPULATION OF KARNATAKA

We learn about the following in this chapter,

- the significance of the population of Karnataka.
- the size, growth, extent and distribution of population.
- the density of population and literacy.
- the effect of overpopulation and important populated cities.

A group of people living in a particular geographical area is called 'population'. It plays an important role in the economic development of that area. People, with the help of their intelligence and skill, utilize the natural resources properly and enable the country to develop well. The development of a country depends on the size of its population, its growth rate, age distribution, quality etc.

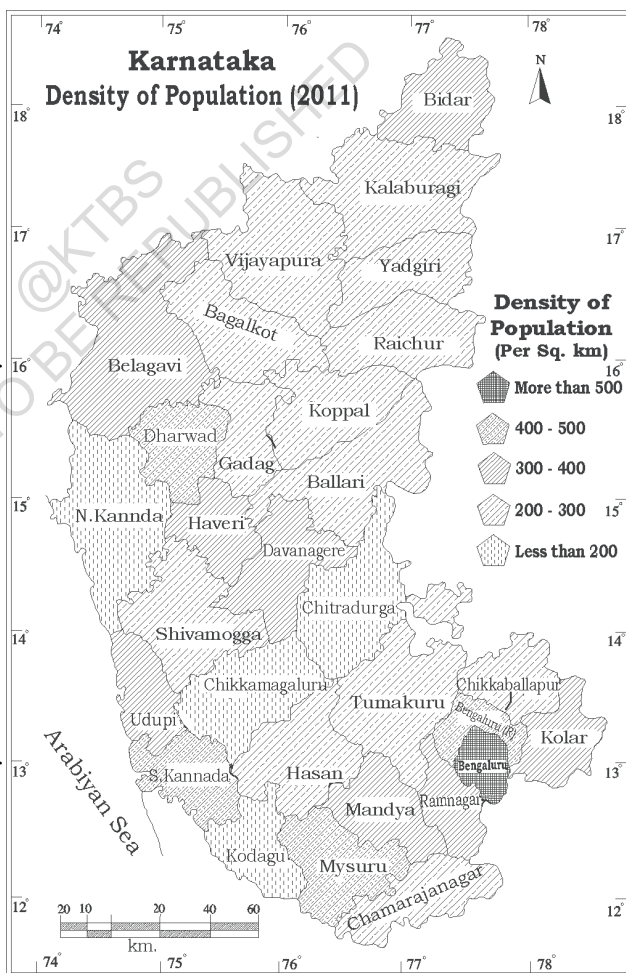
Size of population : As explained earlier, Karnataka ranks eighth in the country with respect to its area. It ranks ninth with respect to the size of population. According to the 2011 the census, total population of Karnataka is 6,11,30,704. Of these, 3,10,57,742 are males and 3,00,72,662 are females. The distribution of population is not the same in all the districts of the state. Bengaluru Urban district has the first position with the largest population, and Kodagu district occupies the last position. After Bengaluru, Belagavi, Mysuru, Tumakuru, Kalaburagi and Ballari districts are other densely populated districts.

Growth of the population : According to the 2001 census, the total population of Karnataka was 5,28,50,562. In the decade from 2001 to 2011, 80,80,142 persons have been added to the population. The growth rate during this period was 15.67 %. This growth rate is lower than the growth rate of population in India (17.64%). The reason for this is awareness about family planning programmes, literacy programmes, birth control etc.

Density of population : The number of people living in an area of one square kilometer is known as density of population. According to the 2001 census, the density of population in our state was 275 people per sq.km. It has increased to 319 at the time of 2011 census. Still it is lower than the density of population in India which is 382 persons per sq.km. When district-wise density is considered, Bengaluru Urban district has the highest density at 4378 persons per sq. km. and occupies the first position. It is followed by Dhakshina Kannada, Mysuru, Bengaluru Rural, Dharwad and Kolar. In contrast Kodagu district has the lowest density with 135 persons per sq. km.

Rural and Urban Population : Karnataka has a large number of villages (29,406) As per the 2011 census, the rural population is totally 3.75 crore. It means that the rural population is 61.4% and 38.6% (2.35 crore) live in urban areas. Compared to the average urban population of India, the urban population of Karnataka is greater. It is not distributed equally in all the districts. Bengaluru Urban district has the largest urban population whereas Kodagu district has the smallest urban population.

Sex ratio : The number of females per thousand males is called sex ratio. In 2001, the average gender ratio was 965. It has risen to 968 in



2011. Sex ratio is not the same in all the districts. Udupi, Kodagu, Dakshina Kannada and Hassan districts have more females than males. Udupi district, with 1093 females per thousand males, has highest level of sex ratio in the state. It is followed by Kodagu, Dakshina Kannada and Hassan districts. Bengaluru Urban district with 908 females per thousand males, has the lowest sex ratio in the state.

Dicuss :

The State population is the state human resource. How ?

Age structure : According to the 2011 census, out of the total population children below 15 age form 29.7%, old people above 60 years of age are 5.5%, and the working population in the age 15 – 60 is 64.9%.

Literacy Rate : A person who knows to read and write is called a literate. The average literacy rate in 2011 was 75.6%. This rate is higher than the average literacy rate of 74% in India. When district-wise literacy rate is considered, Dakshina Kannada district with 88.6%, occupies the first position. Bengaluru Urban district occupies the second position (88.5%). Udupi districts occupy the third position. In contrast, Yadgir with 52.4% has lowest literacy rate. Male literacy rate is 82.9% whereas female literacy rate is 68.2% in Karnataka. When the literacy rates in urban and rural areas are compared, naturally the literacy rate in urban areas is higher.

Top ten population cities in Karnataka (2011)

Sl. No.	City	Population	Sl. No.	City	Population
1.	Bengaluru	84,99,399	6.	Kalaburagi	5,41,617
2.	Mysuru	9,83,893	7.	Davanagere	4,35,128
3.	Hubballi-Dharwad	9,43,857	8.	Ballari	4,09,644
4.	Mangaluru	6,19,664	9.	Vijayapura	3,26,360
5.	Belagavi	6,10,189	10.	Shivamogga	3,22,428

EXERCISES

I. Fill in the blanks with suitable words.

1. The total population of Karnataka according to the 2011 census is _____.
2. _____ is the most populous district of Karnataka.
3. The district which has more females is _____.
4. The district which has the least population is _____.
5. The average density of population per sq.km in Karnataka is _____.

II. Discuss in groups and answer the following questions.

1. Write a note on the growth of population in Karnataka.
2. Name the districts with the highest and the lowest density of population.
3. Explain the Characteristics of urban and rural population in Karnataka.

III. Activities.

1. Show the distribution of literacy on a map of Karnataka.

IV. Project.

1. Collect the information and write an account of the population in your native place / city.

ECONOMICS

CHAPTER - 1

ECONOMIC STRUCTURE

We learn about the following in this chapter,

- The features of ancient and traditional economic systems and the nature of their transformation
- sources of income and employment
- features of static and dynamic economy
- India's progress towards self-reliant economy

Structural Transformation

We learnt about economic activities last year. Economic activities are classified into agricultural, industrial and service sector activities. The nature of production and employment in these three sectors of the economic system, the level of income, use of technology and the changes that take place in lifestyles are called the economic structure.

Generally, the economic structure of any economy is subjected to continual change. The factors of production namely land, labour, capital and organization improve their efficiency and productivity. The nature of work and the amount of production keep changing with the use of new and appropriate technology in the factors of production.

Ancient Indian economy was, like many ancient economic systems was predominantly an agrarian economy. Majority of the population engaged in cultivation. At that time, farming was subsistence farming. Under that system, the farmers grew just what was necessary and required for them. The wants of the people were few and their life was simple. Hence division of labour was not extensively used. Barter system was in practice. As farming became more commercialized, the ancient economic systems started getting transformed. Instead of growing only what was required for their needs, the farmers began to grow those crops that could be sold at the market for money. Along with the traditional crops of ragi, paddy, jowar and wheat, they began to grow the commercial crops like

coconut, cotton, sugarcane, jute, groundnuts and spices which were more profitable. Agro industries also flourished as cotton, sugar and other commercial crops were grown extensively.

Activity: know about Population in the past and present and change in agriculture field of our villages.

The Industrial Revolution in Britain during the 17th and 18th Centuries gradually spread to other countries. This revolution led to the rise of a new class in society called as the capitalist class. The feudal lords who owned lands, came forward to invest their money in industries, and thus came to be known as investors. Making use of new discoveries, and excited by the huge profits, they established different kinds of industries. Over a period of time, the new technology came to be used in all fields including agriculture. As a result, production, employment opportunities and income increased, leading to an improvement in the standard of living of the people. In this manner, ancient economic systems gave way to modern systems. In the process, some economies progressed much faster than the others. Thus, different economies are in different stages of development today.

Efforts were made to adopt modern agricultural techniques in Indian agriculture too. As a consequence, the use of high-yielding seeds, mechanical farming, chemical fertilizers and insecticides increased. In addition to this, many innovations were made in methods of farming and production, which boosted the change in Indian agriculture. Hybridization, adoption of technology in irrigation facilities etc. led to noticeable increase in production. However, the indiscriminate use of chemical fertilizers, insecticides etc. led to environmental pollution. Land erosion caused loss of fertile land. Unlimited use of water without paying attention to renewal of ground water table reduced the ground water level. Due to haphazard use of pesticides, sources of water in many places became contaminated. As a result of all these changes, organic farming and natural farming have once again gained importance.

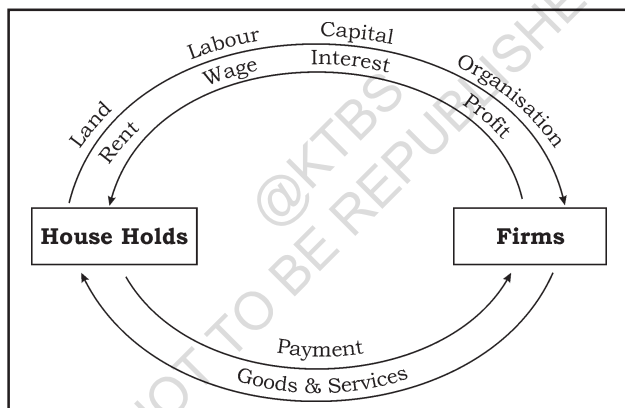
The changes in economic structure brought a significant change in the Indian economy. Compared to eve of political independence, relatively fewer people depend on agriculture for their livelihood. But still majority of the workforce are engaged in

cultivation. However, its contribution to the national income is steadily decreasing. At present, it is the service sector which is contributing the maximum to the national income. It is also providing the greatest number of employment opportunities after agriculture. The industrial sector is growing steadily and its contribution to the national income is second only to the service sector.

Sources of Income

In a simple economy, the income comes from two sources. They are: 1) the household sector and 2) the firms sector. These generate income through mutual exchange.

Look at the following diagram to understand the flow of income in a simple economies and mutual dependence between household and firm sector.

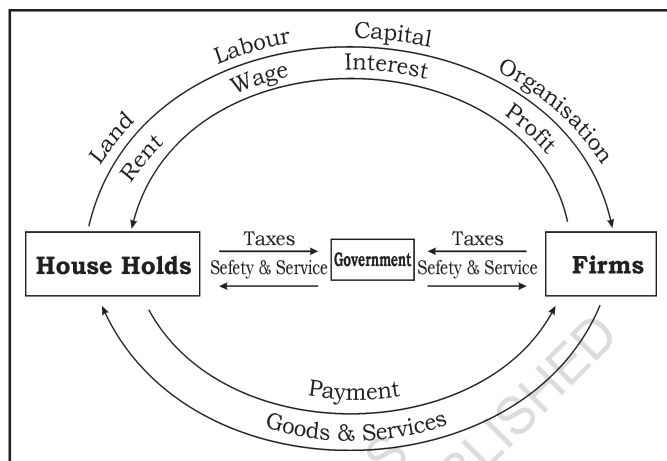


The household sectors own the factors of production namely land, labour, capital and organization, and supply them to the firms. In return, the firms provide rent for using land, wages for utilizing labour, interest for utilizing capital and profit for organization. Hence, Rent, wages, interest and profit comprise the income of household.

The firms utilize the factors of production and produce goods and services which are sold to the household sectors. The money that the household sectors pay for these goods and services comprises the income of the firms sectors.

Modern nations are welfare states. Hence, in order to earn income to undertake welfare programmes, the governments levy taxes on households and firm sectors. In return, it provides security and

services like education, health, housing, electricity, transport and drinking water facilities etc. to the household. In the same manner, the government also provides services like transport and communication facilities, security and electricity etc. to the firms. Government also gives the transfer payments to households and subsidies to firms. Let's look at the following diagram.



Sources of Employment :

In order to make a living, people work in the different sectors of the economy like agriculture, industry and service sector. Gradually, the agriculture-based nations are turning into industrial and service-oriented nations. As the Indian economy progress, many changes took place even in the agricultural sector with the adoption of modern technology. The use of technology and skilled farming practices led to the creation of a surplus labour force in the agriculture sector which brought increased disguised unemployment.

By the time, the industrial and service sectors had also begun expanding in India. The work force from the agricultural sector began to shift to industrial and service sectors. However, most of the jobs in those sectors required skilled manpower. This became the major obstacle for the unskilled labour force desiring to shift from agricultural sector. These unskilled agricultural laborers were unable to get jobs in the industrial and service sectors. Though some of them managed to get jobs after equipping themselves with the required skills through training, majority of them continued to work in the agricultural sector itself. Some agricultural households have managed to secure excellent yields through their farming skills, and have proved to be role-models for others and there by contributing

to the country's development. Although in India the contribution of the agricultural sector to the Gross Domestic Product is reducing, the proportion of workers depending on farming is huge. The government has undertaken many programs to equip the unskilled farm workers with the necessary skills.

Static and Dynamic Economy

The word 'static' has been derived from the Greek word 'statike'. 'Statike' means 'stand still.' In economics, it refers to a situation which witnesses absolutely no changes. Static economy is a timeless economy where there are no changes at all. The fundamental factors of the economy like the size of population, availability of capital, methods of production, nature of organization and people's wants remain static without any alteration. Hence, economic development remains stunted.

During British rule, the Indian economy was a static economy. Due to the long-drawn economic exploitation of the British, India had been reduced to a poor nation. Lack of nutritious food and dearth of health facilities had led to increased death rate. As a result of poverty, there was an enormous scarcity of capital. Outdated production processes continued in agriculture and industry. Thus, the pre-independence Indian economy was static.

The word 'dynamic' has been derived from the Greek word 'dynamikos'. It refers to drastic changes or continuous change. Dynamic economics is the study of the variations that take place in an economy. It analyses the process of change that takes place from time to time in an economy. In a dynamic economy, the size of population, availability of capital, methods of production, nature of organization and people's wants keep on changing continuously. The economic development varies from year to year. As a result, the economy gets transformed into a modern economy. With the use of modern technology, the methods of production and the volume of production go on shifting. Thus, due to all these developments, people's lifestyles also keep changing.

After independence, the Indian economy has got transformed into a dynamic economy. With the expansion of medical facilities, death rate has decreased and life expectancy at birth has increased. Through the implementation of five-year plans, capital investment has risen. Adoption of modern technology has led to speedy variations in the methods of production in the agricultural and industrial sectors. Due to this, production has improved. Standard of living of the people

has changed, along with their needs. The new economic policy introduced in 1991 brought in liberalization, privatization and globalization which, in their turn, accelerated the speed of change. Consequently, the economic structure is getting reorganized. The new economic reforms has a negative impact on agricultural sector whereas there is a positive impact on service sector, where as Industrial sector is also growing slowly. The government has taken efforts to provide a 'Safety Net' to those who have been affected negatively by the new economic policy. It is working towards an inclusive growth in the nation.

EXCERCISES

I. Fill in the blanks with suitable words.

- 1) Positive change relates to _____ activities.
- 2) In the ancient economies, _____ was the main one.
- 3) There are _____ sectors in a simple economy.
- 4) 'Static economics' has been derived from the word _____.
- 5) Industrial Revolution first took place in _____.

II. Answer the following after discussing them in groups:

- 1) What is 'Positive change'?
- 2) Mention the feature of ancient economics systems.
- 3) How did the capitalist class emerge?
- 4) What are the sources of Income ?
- 5) What are the source of Employment ?
- 6) Explain the difference between static and dynamic economics.

III. Project work.

- 1) Draw a diagram showing the sources of income of the government and explain it.

IV. Activity.

- 1) Consult your parents and list the names of crops that were grown by the farmers of your village/town 20 years ago. Compare them with the crops being grown now. Identify the changes that have taken place in the crops in your village/town in this 20-years period. Write a short essay on this development.

SECTORS OF INDIAN ECONOMY

We learn about the following in this chapter,

- major sectors of the Indian economy.
- meaning and importance of primary sector.
- importance of secondary sector and classification.
- role of public sector and private sector.
- importance of tertiary sector.
- Karnataka economy.

As you have already known that based on economic activities, the Indian economy has been classified into three sectors, namely

- 1) Primary sector** - consisting of agriculture, animal husbandry, forestry, logging and fishing.
- 2) Secondary sector** - consisting of manufacturing, mining, quarrying, gas and water supply, construction, electricity.
- 3) Tertiary sector** - consisting of education, transport, storage communication, tourism, hotel and restaurant, insurance, real estate, business services, public administration and other services.

Primary Sector

The primary sector includes agriculture and its allied activities like Sericulture, Horticulture, Animal husbandry, Poultry, Fishery, Floriculture etc. which provide raw materials to agro-based industries.

Importance of Agricultural Sector : Agriculture is a major occupation in India. Still it is the backbone of our economy. Its importance can be briefed as follows,

1. More than 52% of people are still depending on agriculture, directly and indirectly for their livelihood.
2. It provides raw materials for agro-based industries.
3. It provides food for human beings and fodder for animals

4. It helps in the capital formation through the savings of the farmers.

Though agriculture is the main occupation, the condition of farmers is not yet satisfactory due to the following reasons.

- 1) Majority of farmers are small and marginal.
- 2) Large portion of cropped area is rain fed.
- 3) Productivity in agriculture is very low.
- 4) Majority of farmers are ignorant about the modern tools and new techniques of production.
- 5) Farmers do not get the correct price for their products due to the existence of middlemen.

Government has undertaken various measures to improve the productivity of agriculture and also to improve the conditions of farmers in the country.

Secondary Sector

Secondary sector is also called Manufacturing sector where raw materials are converted into finished products. The industries can be classified into three groups namely ,

- a) Agro-based Industries
- b) Forest-based Industries
- c) Mineral-based Industries.

Industries are classified into two groups on the basis of ownership namely (1) public sector industries and (2) private sector industries.



Agriculture

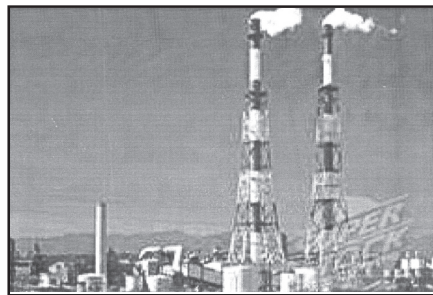
Activity :

1. Meet a farmer of your village and collect the following information
 - a) What are the crops grown by them in this year?
 - b) After the crops produced how is the selling system?

Activity :

Know the recent developments in agriculture.

Public sector industries are under the ownership of Government. These are classified as Central Public Sector Enterprises (CPSE) and State Public Sector Enterprises (SPSE). Private Sector industries are under the ownership of Private People. They include multinational companies and other Private industries on the basis of capital investment and machineries. They are classified as large scale, medium scale, small scale and micro type industries (MSME's)



Industries

Public Sector in India : During the pre-independence period the participation of the public sector in economic activity was virtually absent. The only organizations which were under the management and the government control were Railways, Port Trust, Post and telegraphs, Air craft and defence factories.

However, since the inception of Industrial Policy 1956, there has been a huge expansion of the public sector industries in independent India. Public sector units (PSUs) at present constitute a major national capability in terms of their scale of operation, coverage, technical expertise and employment generation. The important PSUs in India are HMT, BHEL, ITI, Hindustan Ship Building Yard, etc..,

Private sector : The private sector refers to all types of individual and corporate enterprises in the field of economic activity. In this sector different factors of production in various productive activities are owned and managed privately by individual of private corporate bodies. For example Tata, Birla, Zindal, Mahindra, Ambani, Kirloskar, etc..

Multinational companies (MNC's) : An enterprise which is managed from home country and has operational branches in different countries is called Multinational company. Generally any company or group that gets more than quarter of revenue from its operations from outside the home country is also called MNC's. After economic reforms many MNC's have started their enterprises in India.

Eg : Sony (Japan), Samsung (south korea), Hindustan Liver (England) etc.

Post 1991 Economic reforms, by Indian Government has brought Public Private Partnership(PPP) in various infrastructure projects. Privatization has got major boost after the 1991 Economic reforms.

Importance of industrial Sector : Industrial sector strengthens the economy as :

- 1) It brings higher income to the nation.
- 2) It provides employment to the people.
- 3) Standard of living of the people will be increased.
- 4) It helps to modernise the agriculture as it provides tractors, machineries, fertilisers etc.
- 5) Reduces the pressure of population on agriculture. Many hill migrate to cities & towns.
- 6) It helps to earn more foreign exchange.
- 7) Industrial regions also develop as centers of trade, education, transport, Banking etc.

Tertiary Sector

Tertiary sector is also called service sector. At present the world economy is dominated by service sector. Banking, Insurance, Trade, Transport and communication, Health, Education and training etc. are important components of service sector.

Banks : Banks are the financial institutions, which accept different types of deposits from the general public. Then they advance loans to those who are in need of finance. Banks act as the mediators between savers and investors.

Insurance : Insurance is a way of protection against the financial losses. It guards against the unforeseen events, which cause damages and destruction to human life and properties. For example death, incapacitation due to accident, old age sickness, theft, fire, flood, earthquake, riot, lightning, burning, sea piracy, sinking of ship, vessels colliding etc. There are two types of insurance, namely General insurance and Life insurance.

Transport : Transport is a system which carries passengers and goods from one place to another. Land transport, water transport and air transport are the different modes of transport, which play an important role in economic development. they bring a wide market for the goods and services.



Transport

Communication : Communication refers to the sharing of ideas, thoughts, messages from person to person and from one place to another place. Postal services, telecommunications, fax, email, newspapers, Internet all help to communicate the people from one to another place of the world.

Health : 'Health is wealth' and 'a sound mind in a sound body' - statements convey the importance of health in one's life. According to World Health Organization- Health refers to "the person, who is free from physical, mental, social and intellectual disorders".



Health care in India is gradually improving. There is a steep decline in Death rate to 7.2 per thousand. Infant mortality rate to 47 per thousand live births, and child mortality is 15 per thousand. There is a rise in average expectancy of life to 66.9 years in 2011. Medical awareness programs have helped to control deadly diseases like Tuberculosis (TB), Cholera and Malaria. Polio has been completely eradicated from India due to the determined will of the Government.

Education : Education is derived from a Latin word 'educare' which means 'lead to light'. According to Gandhiji 'Education brings all round development in personality of the child'.

The Government in order to increase the literacy, has brought Rastreeya Saksharatha Mission in 1988, Sarva Shiksha Abhiyan in

2001, Mid day meal scheme in 1995, Raashtriya Madhyamik Shiksha Abhiyaan (RMSA) in March 2009 to improve the quality of education in our country.

Contribution of different sectors to National Income

The following table shows the contribution of different sectors to our national income

Sectors	1950-51(%)	1990-91(%)	2000-01(%)	2011-12(%)
Primary sector	59	35	27	14
Secondary sector	13	24	25	27
Tertiary sector	28	41	48	59

KARNATAKA ECONOMY

Karnataka, is the 8th biggest state of India, extends over an area of 191,791 Sq Kms. For administration purpose it is divided into 4 divisions, 30 districts, 176 taluks. It is endowed with rich natural resources like evergreen forests of western ghats, coastal region, rich flora and fauna and ore deposits. These resources are contributing to the economic development in many ways. you can learn more information about our resources in Geography.

Agriculture : More than 52% of the workforce is still dependent on Agriculture in Karnataka. Agriculture in the state is characterised by wide crop diversification. Karnataka has attained self sufficiency in food grains, but where as in case of the production of pulses there is deficit.

About 30% of the cultivable area is under irrigation and 70% is dependent on rainfall. Irrigation potentials are created through major and minor irrigation projects. For example Ghataprabha, Malabrabha, Narayanapura, Alamatti dam, Tungabhadra, Hemavathi, Harangi, Krishnaraja sagar etc.

Paddy, jowar, ragi, wheat, bajra are important food crops grown in Karnataka. Cotton, sugarcane, tobacco, potato, oil seeds, coffee, tea are major commercial crops of the state. cardamom, pepper, coconut, areca nut and banana are the major species and plantation crops of the state.

Horticulture : Karnataka is one of the leading states in horticulture. In order to improve the cultivation of horticulture, the state government has under taken many initiatives like area expansion, assistance to farmers, supply of seeds and seedlings, micro irrigation, control of pests and diseases, post harvest management and marketing etc. 'Karnataka state Horticulture Development Agency' has been established to develop horticulture farms and nurseries with more scientific approach. NABARD is providing credit facilities through its agencies for the expansion of horticultural crops.



Mango tree

Floriculture in Karnataka :

Floriculture is also called flower farming. It is the cultivation of flowering and ornamental plants for botanical gardens and floristry (floral industry). Karnataka is the leader in floriculture. Devanahalli and Chikkaballapur are leading flower growing taluks in the state. India's exports in floriculture is increasing and the major portion of flowers exported from India are from Karnataka. Karnataka Agro Industries Corporation(KAIC), National Horticulture Board help to establish a flowry business with cold storage facilities and freight subsidies for entrepreneurs in Karnataka.



Floriculture

Animal Husbandry and dairy development :

Karnataka ranks second place in India in milk production. The state's share in live stock and poultry of India is 6.2% and 6.48% respectively. The milk production in the state has increased from 4.5 million tons in 2008-09 to 4.8 million tons in 2009-10. The health of livestock and poultry in the state are catered through a network of veterinary centers established through out Karnataka.



Animal Husbandry

Karnataka Milk Federation (KMF) is a state level Co-operative organization which is implementing dairy development in the state under 'operation flood'. It markets milk and dairy products to the consumers.

Fisheries : Karnataka has rich resource of fish culture with a continental shelf of 27000 sq km with 320 km of coastline and 5.60 lakh hectares of inland waters. It gives huge scope for development of fisheries. The total fishermen of the state is 7.66 lakh comprising 2.75 lakh marine and 4.91 lakh inland fisher men. The average fish production in the last 5 years is about 300 lakh tons. The state contribution to India's total fish production is 4.8%. There are seven fishing harbors in the state located at Karwar, Tadri Honnavar, Bhatkal, Gangolli, Malpe and Mangaluru. Export of marine products is earning good foreign exchange for Indian economy.

Industry: Karnataka is a centre for some of the Largest Public sector industries of India. Hindustan Aeronautics Limited (HAL) is dedicated to research and development activities for indigenous fighter aircraft for the Indian Air Force. It is the Largest Public sector Industry in Karnataka which has more than 9500 employees. National Aerospace Laboratories (NAL), Bharat Heavy Electricals Limited (BHEL), Indian Telephone Industries (ITI), Bharat Earth Movers Limited (BEML), Bharat Electronics Limited (BEL), Hindustan Machine Tools (HMT) are other heavy industries established in Karnataka under public sector. TVS motor cycle manufacturing Plant at Mysuru, Tata motors at Dharwad, Electrical equipments manufacturing companies like Kirloskar, ABB, Kavika, Larsen and Turbo (L&T) are some of the important private Sector Industries established in Karnataka. Infosys and Wipro are the leading IT (Information technology) Companies from Karnataka.

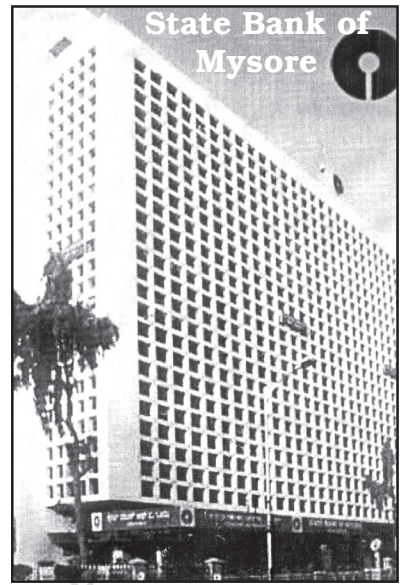
Karnataka is the leading state in bio-technology industry. It has built up considerable resources and talent. It is one of the first state to frame an industry oriented biotechnology policy.

Banking : Bharatha Rathna Sir M Vishweswaraiah established State Bank of Mysuru in 1913. Since then Karnataka has a premier position in banking. Dakshina Kannada and Udupi are called as the Cradles of banking industry. Canara Bank, Syndicate Bank, Corporation Bank, Vijaya Bank which are leading public sector banks, they had their roots from these two districts. Canara bank is the first bank to sponsor the Regional Rural Bank (RRB) in the state. Now 27 public

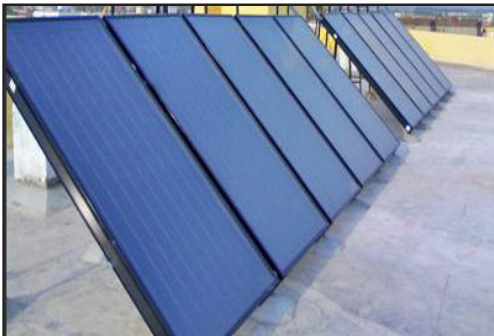
sector commercial banks, 16 private commercial banks and 6 regional rural banks are operating in the state. IDBI, Axis bank, ICICI bank, Indus bank etc. are the leading private banks operating in the state.

Tourism : Karnataka with its great heritage and cultural background has vast potential for the sustainable development of tourism industry. Since 1988 tourism has been given priority. Tourism is instrumental for socio economic growth of the state as well as providing lot of employment opportunity for both skilled and unskilled workers. It also helps the growth of transport, trade, Health, Horticulture, floriculture and MSME's .

Power: Karnataka generates power in four different forms, namely Hydro power, Thermal power, Wind power and Solar power. Hydro power is the major source of electricity generation in the state. Electricity generation plants are owned and controlled by Karnataka power corporation limited (KPCL). Karnataka Power Transmission corporation limited (KPTCL) is responsible to distribute the power throughout the state.



Wind power



Solar power



Hydro Electric power

Transport

Transport : Transport is the lifelines of the state economy. Agriculture, industry, mining, trade and other activities depend on transport system. without systematic transportation no economic development is possible. Therefore transport is the key for economic development. Road transport, railways, water transport and airways are helpful for economic development.

Road Transport : Karnataka is having a wide range network of road. Roads connect every nook and corner of the state. They act as basic infrastuture for both rural and urban areas. Important roads and bridges are being developeed with co ordination of private capitalist. under 'Pradhan manthri Sadak Yojane' main roads to every village are linked.

Karnataka State Road Transport corporation (KSRTC) is a Government owned enterprise is known for its efficient public transport. For efficient functioning and operational feasibility, the state government has bifurcated this corporation into four corporations namely 1) Karnataka State Road Transportation (KSRTC), 2) Bengaluru Mahanagar Road Transportation (BMTC), 3) North West Karnataka State Road Transportation (NWKRTC), 4) North East Karnataka State Road Transportation (NEKRTC).

Railways : Railway transportation is contributing Largely for the socio-economic development and integration of the state. Most of the capital cities of the nation is facilitated by railway transport from Bengaluru. Railway Stations are upgraded, electronic signaling system is installed for smoth transport of railway .The central office of south western railway zone is at Hubballi. All most Railway routes of the state come under this administration. This transportation carries not only passangres, but also goods.

Water Transport : Karnataka State has a coastal line of 320Kms, consisting of one major Port and 10 small ports. The big New Mangalore major port is owned by central government, remaining ports are under the ownerahip of state Government. Among these karwar, Belikeri, Malpe and Mangalore ports carry considerable quantity of goods. State Water transport have facilitated link to many states and many countries of the world.

Air Transport : Air transportation is the fastest transport. It can carry men and materials from one place to another very quickly. It is

very useful to internal and international trade of the state. The country's first green field international airport has been developed at Devanahalli near Bengaluru. It facilitates considerable contribution to the development of agriculture, industries, Bio-technology, information technology and other fields of the state. Airports are there in the other cities also like Mangaluru, Hubballi and Mysuru. Government is trying to develop these Airports under private participation.

Communication : The telecommunication system in the state is operated by both public and private sectors. Along with Bharath Sanchar Nigam Ltd (BSNL), Other major private operators in Karnataka are Vodafone, Bharathi Airtel, Spice, Reliance etc.

Health and Education : Karnataka has made significant progress in imparting the health status of its people. Over the period it has made substantial progress in building better health services both in urban and rural areas. The primary health infrastructure in the rural areas has fulfilled the need of the people through "Minimum needs program". There are 2310 primary health centers, 8870 sub-centers and 180 community health centers in Karnataka.

The department of Health and Family welfare service implements various national and state health programs of public importance. It also provides systematic health care services to the people of the state through various types of health and medical institutions. Eg: Janani Suraksha Yojana, Thaiy Bhagya, Madilu etc.

Education : The economic growth of Karnataka is largely based on the knowledge base of the society. The state has embarked on significant reforms in the education sector with increased public investment to ensure quality education. There are primary schools, High schools, pre-university colleges and Universities in Karnataka which are imparting quality education.

Karnataka is one of the fastest growing states in India. It has attained 75.6% of literacy by 2011. Government of Karnataka has established 'Karnataka knowledge commission', not only to increase the higher education but also to meet the requirements of the growing industry and service sectors as well as to meet the global challenges. All above fields are providing their own contributions to the economic development of karnataka with mutual co-operation.

EXERCISES

I. Fill in the blanks with suitable words.

- 1) Main occupation of India is _____ .
- 2) Health and Education come under _____ sector.
- 3) The total Geographical land of Karnataka is _____.
- 4) SBM was established by _____ in 1913.
- 5) Manufacturing activities belong to _____.
- 6) The coastline area of Karnataka is _____.
- 7) To expand higher education Karnataka government has established _____ commission.
- 8) New Economic Policy was introduced in _____.

II. Answer the following questions with group discussion.

- 1) Define primary sector.
- 2) State the different sectors of Indian economy
- 3) Explain the importance of Industrial sector.
- 4) Which places of India are called as cradle of Banking?
- 5) What is Education according to Gandhiji?
- 6) State the group of Industries.
- 7) List the important irrigation projects of Karnataka.
- 8) What is Health according to W.H.O. ?

III. Project work.

- 1) Prepare a project on Karnataka Economy by explaining the different Economic activities.

IV. Activity.

- 1) "The Third sector is in top position in the world." Give a real picture with supported information about this statement.
- 2) List the industries that are in your locality and classify.

MONEY AND CREDIT

We learn about the following in this chapter,

- importance, evolution and functions of money.
- indigenous bankers and types of credit.
- evolution of banks and their types.
- introduction of different types of bank deposits.
- establishment and functions of Central Bank of India.

Money is fundamental discovery, which has eased the day to day transactions, valuing goods and services and has allowed us to store the wealth and trade in future. It can be said that the commercial side of man's existence is because of the discovery of money. G. Crowther rightly points out that "Every branch of knowledge has its fundamental discovery. In mechanics it is the wheel, in science it is the fire, in politics the vote, similarly in economics, in the whole commercial side of man's social existence, money is the essential invention on which all the rest is based".

Money buys goods and services. It is generally accepted as means of payment, measure and store of value. According to Robertson 'Money is anything which is widely accepted in payment for goods or in discharge of other business obligations'.

Money is derived from Roman word 'Moneta Juno'. Moneta Juno is the roman goddesses and the republic money of Roman Empire-money was minted in close to her temple. The Indian rupee is derived from Sanskrit word Rupya which means silver coin.

Evolution of Money : Today we use paper notes, coins as money. But the evolution of this stage has not happened overnight. It took thousands of years to reach such a stage. There are many stages of evolution of money. The earliest and primitive stage is Barter system. Now let us discuss the different stages of evolution of money.

Barter system : In the primitive stage, men exchanged goods for goods without the use of money. Barter was extremely difficult method of trade involving lots of time and energy. For example if A had cow and wanted Sheep in exchange A had to search an individual

who not only had a sheep, but also who needed cow in exchange. If finally, A comes across one such individual then the question is how many sheep are equivalent to one cow? Hence Barter system had many deficiencies like lack of double coincidence of wants, common measure of value, indivisibility of commodities, difficulties of storing wealth. The next stage of evolution was commodity money.

Commodity money : A commodity with a prescribed size and weight was adopted as money and everything else was measured in terms of the standard commodity. Different commodities were regarded as commodity money at different economies. For example; cattle in Greece, Sheep in Rome, teeth in China.

The introduction of money as unit of account didn't solve all the difficulties of barter. The next stage of development is metallic money.

Metallic money : The precious metals especially Gold, Silver, Bronze were used for metallic money. The standard weight and fineness of metal especially gold and silver with a seal on it became medium of exchange. They were of different denomination easily divisible, portable and were convenient in making payments. The next stage of development in the money is paper money.

We already know different types of coins used by different kings in history.



Metallic money

Paper money : The metallic money was unsafe to carry from one place to another. Hence traders began to carry the written documents issued by known financiers as evidence of the quantity of money at their command. The written documents were not actual



Paper money

money, but accepted as they were readily exchanged for money on demand. People gradually became accustomed to bank notes and they were not used merely as substitutes, but as actual money. This happened as the respective governments of the economy gave the monopoly of note issue to their central banks. It became legal tender. No individual can refuse the legal tender in the transaction in the respective country. In India it is rupee, similarly in USA - dollar, UK-Pound, Germany - mark, Japan -Yen, China-Yuan, etc



Bank money : As trade and commerce flourished bank money came into existence. Cheques, drafts, credit and debit cards etc are some of the examples. The money can be transferred from deposit to deposit or from deposit to cash with the help of cheques. Cheques are used for transactions of goods and services.

A/c Pay Only Non Negotiable		दिनांक/DATE 31-12-2009	
PAY Jitendra Mansukhbhai Patel			
रुपये RUPEES ** Nine Hundred Ninety Nine Rupees Only**		या धारक को XXXXXX ER	
खा. सं. A/c No.	अ.प. L.F.	ए.क. INTLS	अदा करें ₹Rs. ** 999 /--
भारतीय स्टेट बैंक STATE BANK OF INDIA		Demo Company Pvt. Ltd.	
राजकोट - 360 001 RAJKOT - 360 001 MSBL/321		Mr. John Jain	

Cheque leaf

Credit card and Debit card : Credit card enables the holder to buy goods and services on credit at specified suppliers. Credit card is swiped on the electronic machine and the payment will be made to seller account from the buyer credit account. The debit card also works in a similar fashion, but in the debit card the money will be deducted from the buyer's savings account.



Debit card

Functions of money : Functions of money are classified into

- 1) Primary or main function
- 2) Secondary function and
- 3) Contingent function

1) Primary or main functions : The important functions of money performed in every economy are classified under main functions. They are :

- a) **Medium of exchange or means of payment :** Money is used to buy the goods and services. The introduction of money has split the transaction into two. In the first case money is obtained by selling the commodities in the market and secondly the goods and services are purchased from market using the money.
- b) **Measure of Value :** Money has removed the greatest inconvenience felt under Barter as the prices of all goods and services are expressed in terms of money. As all the values are expressed in terms of money it is easier to determine the rate of exchange between various type of goods and services.

2) Secondary functions : The three important secondary functions are :

- a) **Standard of deferred payments :** Money helps the future payments too. A borrower borrowing today places himself under an obligation to pay a specified sum of money on some specified future date. Similarly, a person buys on time agrees to pay a stated amount of money on a specified future date.
- b) **Store of value or store of purchasing power :** Savings were discouraged under Barter system as some commodities are perishable. The introduction of money has helped to save it for future as it is not perishable. But the value of money may increase or decrease depending on inflation trends. Further it has also made the capital accumulation possible.
- c) **Transfer of value or transfer of purchasing power :** The introduction of money has made the exchange of goods to distant places as well as abroad possible. It was therefore

felt necessary to transfer purchasing power from one place to another. Borrowing and lending takes place in terms of money. It is with this function idle money with person was lent to another for the gain of interest, who puts it to productive use.

3) Contingent Functions : In addition to primary and secondary functions, money also performs certain contingent functions. They are

- a) Basis of Credit :** Money forms the basis of credit. The cheque system has further allowed the credit creation by banks.
- b) Increase productivity of capital :** Money in form of capital is put to several uses. The Liquidity feature of money has helped the capital to be transferred from the less productive to more productive uses.

Forms of Credit

Credit refers to an agreement in which the lender supplies the borrower with money, goods or services in return for the promise of future payment. In India, we have two different forms of credit namely formal credit sector and informal credit Sector.

1) Informal Credit Sector : The system of informal credit by indigenous banking dates back to ancient time in India. The informal credit Sector includes the indigenous bankers who are called as Shroffs, Mahajans, Shets, Sahukars, Chettis. They are basically the moneylenders. Along with them credit is also given by traders, employers, relatives and friends, who also are part of this sector.

Until the middle of the nineteenth century indigenous banks were the central part of the financial system in India. The advent of the European bankers disturbed the monopoly of these indigenous bankers, as they enjoyed government patronage in India. But despite this the money lenders were playing the major role in the credit system. Post independence, Government of India took series of initiatives to free the credit system free from the clutches of money lenders. Government nationalized 14 commercial banks in 1969, 6 in 1980, established Regional Rural Banks exclusively for rural India credit needs. But unfortunately money lenders still cater to sizeable share in rural credit.

Money lenders succeed as they are easily accessible by the small and poor borrowers in both rural and urban areas, more so in rural areas. They have signified application procedures, quick delivery of credit. But the major problem with the money lenders is they charge heavy interest rates. Some time they charge even on daily and weekly basis. The interest rate varies between 24 % to 100 % or more depending on the urgency of the borrower. Many borrowers fall into debt trap unable even to pay the dwindling interest.

2) Formal Credit : The formal credit sector is distributed by banks and cooperatives. They do not charge the exorbitant interest rates. Their intention is not just earning profits, but also has the social responsibility which is regulated and supervised by the Reserve Bank of India.

Banks and Deposits : Banks play a vital role in the process of economic development. There is no unanimity in the derivation of the term banks. Few believe the English term bank is derived from Italian word 'Banco' which means a Bench. For others it is derived from German word 'Banck' which means joint stock fund or a common fund.

The Indian Banking Regulation Act of 1949 defined the term "Banking Company" as "any company which transacts the business of banking in India", and the term "banking" as "accepting, for the purpose of lending or investment, of deposits of money from the public, repayable on demand or otherwise withdrawable by cheque, draft, order or otherwise".

Importance of banks : Banks play very significant role in economic development. Bank mobilizes the savings of the public by offering attractive interest rates and help in the process of capital formation. Banks provide the convenient way of payment though the cheque system. Banks give higher rates of interest on fixed deposits. Banks give loans to the borrowers at the prevailing market rate of interest. They help in the development of agriculture industry and services, banks also discounts the bills of exchange. They also offer demand drafts, credit cards, debit cards. The banks also invest the funds on securities. The bank play the major role in the credit creation.

Types of Banks : There are many types of Banks; each type usually specializes in a particular kind of business.

1. **Industrial Banks** : Industrial banks cater to both short-term and long-term loans for industries. The Industrial banks lend money for long periods and provide fixed capital to industrial concerns. For Example :- Industrial Finance Corporation, Industrial credit and Investment Corporation, Industrial Development Bank of India, and various State Finance Corporations.
2. **Exchange Banks** : These banks finance the foreign trade of a country and deal in foreign currency. The main credit instrument here is the bill of exchange and their main function is to discount, accept and collect foreign bills of exchange. They also carry on ordinary banking business but their share is less.
3. **Savings Banks** : These banks encourage saving habit even among with less income. They are concerned with mobilization of small savings of the individuals. They are found in American and European countries. In India savings bank business is performed by post offices and commercial banks.
4. **Co-Operative Banks** : Co-operative banks run on the principle of co-operation. They are registered under the Co-Operative Societies' Act. They confine their activities to members only. They accept deposits from them and advance loans to them at reasonable rates.
5. **Land Mortgage Banks** : They are also co-operative banks. They give long-term loans to agriculturists to carry out permanent improvements on land, such as drainage, irrigation, farm buildings and so on. They are also called as Land Development Banks.

Deposits of commercial banks : Collecting deposits are the important and principal function of commercial banks. The main type of deposits the commercial banks collect are current accounts, savings account deposit, Fixed or term deposits.

Current account deposits : Current accounts are generally opened by business firms, traders and public authorities. They are opened for the convenience of making payments by cheques rather than earning interest. The current accounts help in frequent banking transactions as they are repayable on demand.

Saving Deposits : Saving deposits are opened by customers to save the part of their current income. The customers can withdraw their

money from their accounts when they require it. The bank also gives a small amount of interest to the money in the saving deposits.

Fixed deposits : Fixed accounts are meant for investors who want their principle to be safe and yield them fixed yields. The fixed deposits are also called as Term deposit as, normally, they are fixed for specified period.

Reserve Bank of India

Reserve bank of India is the central bank of India. It was established on 1st April 1935, formally it was started as a share holder's bank. RBI was nationalized on 1st January 1949, since then it is owned and controlled by Government of India.



Reserve Bank of India

Know this :

The Preamble of the Reserve Bank of India describes the basic functions of the Reserve Bank as : "...to regulate the issue of Bank Notes and keeping of reserves with a view to securing monetary stability in India and generally to operate the currency and credit system of the country to its advantage."

Functions of central bank or RBI

1) Monopoly of Note issue : RBI has the monopoly of issuing currency notes of Rs 2 and above namely Rs 5, Rs 10, Rs 100, Rs 500, and Rs 1000. One Rupee is issued and circulated by RBI on behalf of the Government, though the right of issue of one rupee notes or coins is with the Central Government.

2) Acts as Banker to Government : The RBI accepts the deposits of Central and State Governments. It collects the money on behalf of the Government like taxes and other charges. On specific instruction, it also makes the payments on behalf of the Government. It issues Government bonds, Treasury bill and also acts as financial adviser to the Government.



Face Value of Notes

RBI also extends ways and means advances to Central and State Governments. "Ways and Means Advances" (WMA) is not a commercial bank credit. This facility is provided to meet temporary mismatches between revenue collections and revenue expenditures of governments. The maximum volume and period of such advances are governed by agreements between RBI and the concerned government.

3) Bankers bank : It acts as bankers bank. It controls all the banks of the country. All the banks of the country have to keep one part as reserve out of their deposits in the RBI. Whenever banks need additional money RBI provides credit to them. It guides the banks in monetary management.

4) Acts as National Clearing House : RBI acts as the clearing house for settlement of banking transactions economically. This function helps banks to settle their inter banks claims easily.

- *The oldest existing central bank is Sweden's "Riksbank" established in 1668.*
- *Britain Central Bank 'Bank of England' was established in 1694.*
- *USA Central Bank 'Federal Reserve System' was established in 1913.*

5) Acts as the controller of Credit : The RBI controls or expands the credit creation of commercial banks, according to desired monetary situation in the economy. The RBI uses both quantitative and qualitative methods to control or expand the credit.

6) Custodian of Foreign Exchange Reserves : The RBI acts as the custodian of foreign exchange reserves. Adequate reserves will help to maintain foreign exchange rates. In order to minimize the undue fluctuations, depending upon the situations, it may resort to buying and selling of foreign currencies.

7) Publishes the Economic Statistics and Other Information : The RBI collects statistics on economics and financial matters and publishes it periodically. It also publishes report on currency and finance, Financial conditions, State finances, Hand book of statistics on Indian economy and others.

8) Promotion of Banking Habits : The RBI institutionalizes saving through the promotion of banking habit and expansion of the banking system in unbanked areas.

9) Facilities for Agriculture : The RBI extends indirect financial facilities to agriculture regularly. Through NABARD it provides short-

term and long-term financial facilities to agriculture and allied activities.

RBI is playing an important role in the development strategy of Indian Economy. The Reserve Bank has a rich tradition of data collection, generating sound economic research, and knowledge sharing. The Reserve Bank's measures have helped the nation to come out of many financial crises.

EXCERCISES

I. Fill in the blanks with suitable words.

- 1) Indian rupee is derived from _____ .
- 2) Cheque is an instrument from _____ .
- 3) The banks which deal with foreign currency are called _____ .
- 4) The Reserve Bank of India was established in the year _____ .
- 5) The money of Japan is _____ .
- 6) Government of India nationalized 14 commercial Banks in _____ .

II. Answer the following questions.

- 1) What is Barter exchange system ?
- 2) State the means of money
- 3) Which is the central bank of India ?
- 4) Explain the functions of money
- 5) Mention the different types of banks
- 6) Explain the functions of RBI

III. Project work.

- 1) Explain the evolution of money with pictorial information.

IV. Activity.

- 1) Give a report on the functions of commercial banks with real observation.
- 2) Visit your nearest bank, observe their functions.

LABOUR AND EMPLOYMENT

We learn about the following in this chapter,

- important role of labour and its types.
- advantages and Disadvantages of Division of labour
- productive and unproductive labour.
- role of women and discrimination to men.
- employment and its types.
- abolition act of bonded labour and child labour system.

Labour is one of the most important and indispensable factors of production. Different types of jobs require different types of Labour. Along with Land and Capital, Labour forms an important factor of production. No production is possible without the aid of Labour. Unless human beings exert themselves even the richest gifts of nature or large capital cannot produce wealth.

Meaning of Labour : By 'Labour' we mean the capacity to exert physical or mental effort for the purpose of producing goods or a service. It is only 'Human Labour' that is considered in this context. The exertion of non-human animals is not called Labour.

Labour includes all manual and mental effort made in order to earn a living. It results in the production of either goods or services or both. It does not include any work undertaken for one's pleasure or out of charity. The services of a nurse who receives payment are regarded as Labour, but the services of a mother who cares for her sick child are not regarded as Labour.

"Any exertion of mind and body undergone partly or wholly with a view to some good, other than the pleasure derived from the work is called Labour."

— Alfred Marshall

Features of Labour :

1. Labour cannot be separated from the Labourer
2. Labour cannot be accumulated
3. Labour supply varies over time
4. Labour is less mobile
5. Labour differs in efficiency
6. Labour is an active factor.

Importance of Labour : Labour is a productive factor of production. It is considered to be important not only because it is productive but also because it activates other factors and makes them useful for production purposes. Therefore the size of Labour force in a country is determined by the number of people in the age group of 15 to 60 years. Generally, the children below 15 years and aged people above 60 years do not participate in productive activity. In India 40% of population constituted the Labour force in 2011.

Types of Labour : Labour can be of many types. It can be categorized as-

1. Nature of work done :- Physical and mental Labour
2. Skill :- Skilled, semi-skilled and unskilled Labour
3. Training :- Professional and Administrative Labour
4. Income earned :- Productive and unproductive Labour.

Division of Labour

Division of Labour is as old as mankind. Even in the life of Primitive man, we find an elementary division of Labour between man and woman. Man hunted and fished while the woman cooked, made clothes and looked after the children.

By division of Labour we mean the allocation of different parts of the production process to different workers or to different groups of workers. Any modern economy is characterized by the phenomenon of division Labour. In fact, in most cases, a person or a group is engaged in just one line of production. Specialization is the rule rather than the exception.

You Know :

Adam smith's illustration : Adam smith is the father of economics. In his famous book 'The wealth of Nations (1776)' he gives an example of the advantage of division of labour. "One man draws out the wire, another straightens it, a third cuts it, a fourth points it, and a fifth grinds it at the top for receiving the head-the important business of making a pin. According to him, with the division of Labour 10 persons help to produce 48000 pins a day where as without specialization they can produce only 10 pins a day per person.

Advantages of Division of Labour : The important advantages of the division of labour are,

1. **Efficiency of Labour :** The basic advantage of division of Labour is that it increases the efficiency of Labour
2. **Quality of production :** The increase in the efficiency of Labour leads not only to an increase in the quantity of output but also to an improvement in the quality of the produced goods and services.
3. **Profit :** The increase in quantity and quality of output brings greater Profit.
4. **Average cost :** Since Division of Labour increases the total output the average cost of producing a commodity falls, then consumers get goods at cheap rate.
5. **Research and Development :** Division of Labour at a longer period helps in research and innovation which leads to produce variety of new products.

Disadvantages of Division of Labour : The important disadvantages of division of labour are,

1. **Monotony of work :-** Under division of Labour, a worker has to do the same job time and again for years together. Therefore; after some time, the worker feels bored.
2. **Lack of responsibility :-** If the quality of the product is not up to the expected level, none can be held responsible
3. **Increased dependence:-** When the production is divided up into a number of process and each part is performed by different workers, it may lead to dependence among workers.

4. **Unemployment:-** Division of Labour leads to specialization. A worker instead of completing the whole article is specialized in making a small part of it. If he/she is removed from the job, he/she has to look for a job which is of the same type
5. **Class conflict :-** Division of Labour facilitates large scale production which helps the producers to earn huge profits. The producers thus become rich by paying less wages to the workers. This divides the society into haves and have nots (rich and poor).

Gender Dimension of Labour : Women constitute nearly 30% of the labour force in rural area and 20% of in urban areas. The percentage of women labour force is low when it is compared to the male, but the share of women force in total labour force has been increasing gradually. Women are equally important, like men for the growth and development of a country. With economic progress, women are emerging as a force of empowering India. But it is unfortunate that the socio economic status of women labour in India is not increasing. In one way or the other women are exploited in the society.



Women working in different fields.

In India, as per the 2011 census, there are 587 million women. Gender concerns have gained prominence in gender bias and high gender inequality exists in the country. Government has also resolved for gender budgeting in the budget.

Gender bias : The term Gender bias is commonly used to describe how women is far behind and remained with absence of opportunities to improve their level.

Gender bias is exposed in the form of gender inequality. When women do not enjoy the same status and opportunities as men, it is called gender inequality.

There is a wide spread inequality between women and men in India. Women are treated as unequal gender in several ways. Viz unequal sex ratio, low level of female literacy rate, lower work participation rate for women, lower female economic activity rate, representation of women in the higher rank of Government (IAS, IPS and IFS) as compared to male employees. The number of women in Assemblies and Loka sabha is also very low.

Violence against women, both domestic and at workplace is continuing. Early marriage of girls and early pregnancies though have reduced are still in existence.

Women carry a disproportionately greater burden of work than men. Since women are responsible for a greater share in the home-based work, they enter the Labour market over burdened. The dual work is neither recognized in the data nor considered in social policy making.

Productive Labour : Productive Labour is that which creates some utility or which has undergone for earning an income. The anti social activities are not considered productive Labour because they try to rob the wealth of others. According to Adam smith 'productive Labour is only that Labour, which leads to the creation of material goods or assets'.

Reproductive Labour : Reproductive Labour is the work at domestic place, at house. It can also be called as Domestic Labour. It is unpaid work, performed by women in home. Child rearing and caring, cleaning, cooking etc. are the examples for reproductive labour. Domestic labour is labeled with in a feminine gendered sphere and recognized as the basis for inequality between male and female. Exploitation of women by men which is supported by male dominance, illiteracy, ignorance and blind beliefs.

Abolition of Bonded Labour : Bonded labour is one who is bound to work in the house of the land lord for a fixed amount up to a fixed period or till the repayment of the borrowed money. He will be pledged himself to the land lord for the loan amount. The land lord will exploit the workers by paying low wages and extracting more work. It is the other form of slavery. The Government of India abolished bonded Labour system in 1976. This social evil though has declined, is alive in few pockets of the country.

Abolition of child Labour : The children working below the age of 14 years to work is called child Labour. It is a serious problem in India. About 90% of the working children in the rural areas are employed in agriculture and allied activities. In urban areas they are working in small industries, match factories, workshops, hotels, business establishments etc. It deprives the children from education, it adversely affects on their health and spoil their future of children.

Child Labour prohibition act was passed in 1986 by the Government of India. It prohibits the children less than 14 years of age from hazardous jobs.

Employment : Employment is a situation where a person is engaged in the work at the prevailing wage rate in the market, to maintain his/her livelihood as it brings regular income either in private or public sector. In other words employment is a situation where people are engaged in various productive activities to earn their normal income or livelihood.

Un employment :-An unemployed is one who is willing to work at the prevailing market rate, but still does not get the work. In other words it is a situation where able people who are capable of working both physically and mentally at the existing wage rate do not get job opportunities.

In India, of late, the number of unemployed and jobless persons is increasing. They include the educated, skilled, rural and urban people. The total number of unemployed persons increased from 5 million in 1951 to 40.47 million by 2007-08. At present about 9.79% of our working force is unemployed.

NSSO classification: National Sample Survey organization (NSSO) developed three concepts to measure unemployment. They are – usual status , weekly status and daily status of unemployment.

Do you know

*Labour force-work
force=unemployment*

- 1) Usual Status:-** If a worker is unable to work 183 days in a year then he is considered as unemployed. The workers remain unemployed for a major part of the year. This applies to educated

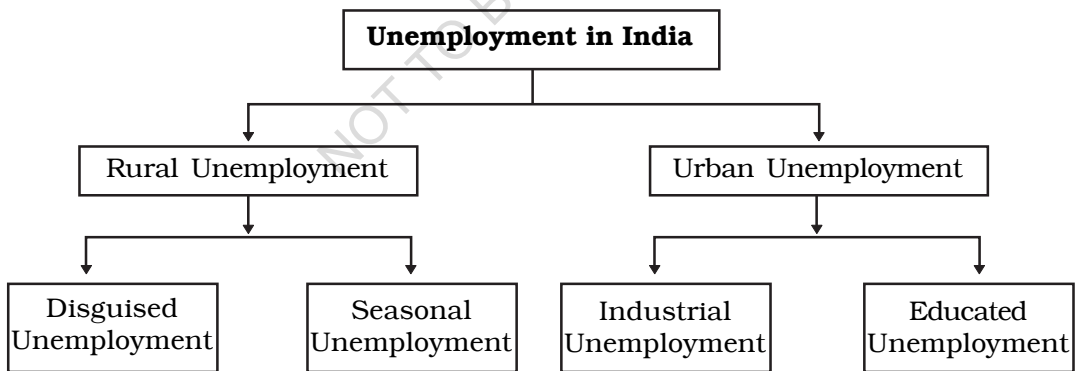
people who will be searching regular or permanent job and they may not accept casual work. This concept is used to measure open unemployment and chronic unemployment.

2) Weekly Status:- On current weekly status basis a person is considered as unemployed if he or she has not worked even for one hour during the survey week. It is a measure of seasonal unemployment.

3) Daily status :- Daily Status of unemployment is measured if a person is unable to work even at least one hour in a day he will be treated as unemployed. If he/she works one hour and less than 4 hours he will be treated as under employed or half a day employed. If he/she works for more than 4 hours in a day, he will be considered as employed for the whole day i.e., one man day's of work. It helps to measure casual unemployment.

Youth unemployment : Unemployment among the people between the age group of 15-30 years is called youth unemployment. It is found in rural and urban areas and more among educateds who are waiting for white-collar job

Types of Unemployment :



Other types of unemployments :-

- | | |
|----------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. Frictional unemployment | 2. Casual unemployment |
| 3. Structural unemployment | 4. Technical unemployment |
| 5. Cyclical unemployment | 6. Chronicle unemployment |

Disguised unemployment : It is a situation of unemployment with surplus manpower than actual requirement and in which the marginal productivity of some workers are zero. So even removal of them will not affect the volume of total production. It is also called under employment of Labour. For eg:- suppose four persons are working in a family farm which is properly organized and if two more workers are employed on the same farm and if there is no change in output, we may say that these two workers are disguisedly unemployed. This type of unemployment is a common feature in rural sector of under developed countries like India. In short, overcrowding in an occupation leads to disguised unemployment. It is common in an over populated country.

Seasonal unemployment :- Some occupations of agriculture and industries are seasonal in nature. They, offer employment for only a certain period of time in a year. People engaged in such a type of work or activities may remain unemployed during the off season. This is called Seasonal unemployment.

Voluntary Unemployment :- It is the unemployment of once own choice. It refers to the unemployment of the leisured classes. The classes, those who have vast properties and who can afford comfortable living without any Labour is called leisured class. In every society there are some people who are unwilling to work at the prevailing wage rate and there are some people who get a continuous flow of income from their property or other sources and need not work. All such people are voluntarily unemployed.

EXERCISES

I. Fill in the blanks with suitable words.

- 1) The famous book of Admsmith is _____ .
- 2) Abolition of bonded labour act was passed in the year _____.
- 3) When the marginal productivits of a labour is Zero is know as _____.
- 4) Division of labour increases _____.
- 5) Abolition of child labour act was passed in the year _____.

II. Discuss in groups and answer the following.

- 1) What is meant by division of labour ?
- 2) What is meant by child labour ?
- 3) Define unemployment.
- 4) Explain the advantages of division of labour.
- 5) List the disadvantages of division of labour.
- 6) State the meaning of productive and unproductive labour.
- 7) What are the types of unemployment ?
- 8) Identify the differences between disguised unemployment and seasonal unemployment.

III. Project work.

- 1) Prepare a project on different types of unemployment and state its position in today's India.
- 2) Write a report on gender dimensions of laboring

IV. Activity.

- 1) Visit a firm and observe the real work with division of labour then prepare a report of your practical experience.

BUSINESS STUDIES

CHAPTER – 1

MANAGEMENT OF BUSINESS

We learn about the following in this chapter,

- meaning of the management.
- principles of management.
- importance of decision making and its process.
- functional areas of management.

Meaning of Management : The term management is used in different senses. Generally the term management is used to refer to the principles of managing the activities of an enterprise. It is also used to refer to a field of learning or a branch of knowledge. In the words of J.L. Haynes “Management is an art of getting things done through other people”. According to George R. Terry “Management is a distinct process consisting of planning, organizing, actuating and controlling performance to determine and accomplish the objectives by the use of people and resources.”

From the above definitions, it is clear that the management is the process of getting Pre-determined things done through others by directing their efforts in an integrated and co-ordinated objectives of business. Management is the sum total of the principle functions namely (a) Planning (b) Organising (c) Staffing (d) Directing (e) Co-ordinating and (f) Controlling.

Principles of Management : For smooth and efficient management of a business concern, certain principles are necessary to be followed. The following principles are suggested by Henry Fayol.

Division of Work : Work has to be divided among the employees. The division of work leads to specialization and efficiency. It minimizes the wastage and maximises the production and profit. This principle can be adopted at all levels of the organisation.

Authority and responsibility : This principle refers to the authority and responsibility, which are the combination of official authority and personal responsibility. Both are compounded with intelligence, experience, past experience, moral worth etc.,

Discipline : This principle refers to the managerial authority and constructive discipline among the officials and subordinates at all levels. It guarantees the fulfillment of objectives set by the management. The discipline required by the superiors should be clear and fair. It also includes the judicious application of penalties.

Unity of command : This is the principle that an employee should receive orders from one superior only.

Unity of Direction : This principle means that each group of activities, having the same objective must have one head and one plan.

Sub-ordination of Individual interest to General interest : This principle tells that the management should minimize the individual differences and should not allow differences to block the fulfillment of general goals of the organisation.

Remuneration of Personnel : The remuneration and methods of payment should be fair and afford to maximum satisfaction to the employees.

Centralisation : This principle refers to the extent to which authority is concentrated, so that it gives the overall yields.

Scalar chain : This principle means that every enterprise should have graded authority or superior-subordinate relationship. The range of authority and responsibility of superiors in relation to the subordinates at various levels should be clearly defined.

Equity : It means that, there must be fair dealing, accommodation or co-operative attitude among the common employees and managers.

Stability of security to personnel : The management must assure security of job to the personnel. Instability of job has both cause and effect of the bad management. The quick labour turnover will result in bad management.

Initiative : The initiative is one of the keen satisfactions. The management should have the capacity to thinkout original plans and execute them with full discretion.

Espirate De-Corps : It is based on the principle "Unity is strength". It emphasizes the need for team work and importance of communication in obtaining it.

DECISION MAKING – PROCESS

Meaning : Decision making can be regarded as the mental process, resulting in the selection of a course of action among several activities.

Need for Decision making – Process:- Each business organisation has its own goals and objectives. In order to achieve these objectives and goals the business organisation has to take decision. There are number of choices available even in a small matter. Suppose a businessman has to transport goods, he has to take a decision about the mode of transportation – whether to send the goods through a truck, tempo, train or by air. He has to choose one among the several alternatives and that alternative should be best suited and economical. It is based on the decision which the businessman has taken. Thus the decision making plays a very significant role in the business.

To-day India has a very diverse set of successful business institutions. In the coming years India will probably deliver more premium to a combination of institutional planning with analysed decision taking styles and organizational cultures. It may operate from one end of the spectrum to the other end. Decision making can be broadly divided into two types. They are :

- (1) Individual decisions (2) Group decisions

In small business organisations like sole trading concerns, it is the individual who takes the decision. They are called individual decisions. These decisions are based on the capability of the individual.

Decision making by a group of people as in the case of Partnership firms and Board of Directors as in the case of Joint Stock Companies or Co-operative Societies are called Group decisions. Here, a number of people take part in taking a decision.

Important elements of Decision making :

- Establishing goals
- Searching for alternatives
- Rational thinking and reasoning
- Evaluation
- Defining tasks
- Developing plans
- Situation

Decision making - importance : Decision making solves many problems in the business organisation. While an appropriate decision can bring profit to the organisation, a wrong decision can result in loss. The following points are to be kept in mind while making decisions.

1) Time factor, 2) experience, 3) wise decision (wisdom), 4) firmness, 5) boldness and 6) clarity.

Solving a problem is directly linked with decision. The following factors are to be kept in mind while taking decisions.

- Analysing the problem.
- Planning of course of action.
- Maintaining courage and patience.
- Farsightedness.
- Ability to take quick and wise decision.

Functional areas of Management : Management is concerned with getting things done through the efforts of others. To get the work done through others, the management has to undertake a number of activities in a systematic manner. These systematic activities are called managerial functions.

The Managerial functions may be classified into different areas. Some of them are : (1) Planning (2) Organising (3) Staffing (4) Directing (5) Co-ordinating (6) Controlling.

1. Planning : It is one of the important functional areas of management. It involves the future course of operation for a given period. The process of planning includes determination of organizational objective and formulation of plans, policies, strategies, programmes, procedures and schedules.

2. Organising : It is the process of bringing together the man power and material resources. Some of the material resources are machines and materials. Putting the material resources and man power together into working order to achieve the objectives is the main purpose of the organizing area of managerial function. It also involves delegation of sufficient authority to the managers and establishment

of linking together the various positions to the purpose of enabling the people to work in a co-ordinated manner.

3. Staffing : It is the function concerned with the recruitment, selection, placement, training, growth and development of all members of the organization.

4. Directing : It is the area of functional management where instructing, guiding, supervising and leading the people of an organization towards accomplishment of the organizational goals. It is issuing orders or instructions to the sub-ordinates and make certain that the instructions are properly carried out and the operations are successfully planned.

5. Co-ordination : It is the harmonious blending of the activities of the different departments for the achievement of the desired goals. It is the arrangement of group efforts to provide unity of actions in the pursuit of common purpose.

6. Controlling : It is an important area of the managerial function. It covers almost all the management activities. It keeps check on other functions of management. It is a function that every manager in the organization has to perform. The main objectives of controlling area are :

- a) to create an atmosphere of order and discipline in the organization to ensure proper co-ordination of activities.
- b) to ensure confirmation of actual performance with the pre-determined plans.
- c) to achieve the increase of the overall efficiency of the organization.

EXERCISES

I. Answer the following questions in a sentence.

1. What is management?
2. What do you mean by decision making?
3. What is individual decision and what is collective decision?
4. What is the principle of authority and responsibility in principles of management.

II. Answer each of the following questions in about four to five sentences.

1. What are the principles of management suggested by Henry Fayol?
2. What are the functional areas of management?
3. Write about the authority and responsibility, scalar chain and centralization in principles of management.
4. What is the need for decision making in management of business?
5. What are the important elements of decision making?
6. What factors are to be kept in mind, while taking a decision?
7. What do you mean by planning and organisation in functional areas of management?
8. How is controlling an important area of managerial function?
9. What are the main objectives of controlling areas?
10. "Directing and co-ordinations are very important functions in business management" how?

III. Activity.

1. Meet a sole trader of your area and request him to give you particulars regarding how he takes decisions, regarding day to-day affairs of his business.
2. Visit a co-operative society near your place and find out the particulars of the meetings to Agenda, Quorum and minutes.

FINANCIAL MANAGEMENT

We learn about the following in this chapter,

- meaning of finance in business
- role and importance of finance in business
- source of Finance – Short term, Long term
- financial institutions. Capital market and stock exchange.

Meaning of finance in business

Meaning : Finance is the acquisition of funds and their effective utilization, keeping in mind the overall objectives of the concern.

Guttmann and Douglas defined business finance as “the activity concerned with planning, raising, controlling and administering of the funds used in business”.

From the above meaning and definition it is clear that business finance is the process of raising, providing and managing of the funds in business.

Role and importance of finance in business organisations :

- Finance is the life blood of every business. Without finance no business activity is possible.
- Finance helps to obtain resources that are required in the process of production and marketing of goods and services.
- Finance integrates the various segments of business enterprise for the smooth running of the business in the direction of attaining the organizational goals.
- Finance guides and regulates the investment decisions and expenditure.
- Finance helps for modernization, diversification, expansion and development of an enterprise.
- Finance is essential to undertake research, market survey, advertisement and publicity for effective marketing of the products.

- Finance is required to develop industries in backward areas.
- Financial stability will enhance the credit worthiness of the concern.

Sources of finance :

The business organizations generally require two types of finance on the basis of the term for repayment. They are

- a) Short term finance
- b) Long term finance

Short term finance : Finance that is required for day-to-day working is called Short term finance. (i) It is required to meet the working capital needs. i.e. to purchase raw materials, to pay wages and salaries, to meet the marketing and administrative expenses. (ii) There is always a time gap between sales and receipt of sale proceeds. To fill the financial gap between these two processes namely sales and receipt of sale proceeds sufficient funds are required. Hence there is a need for short term finance.

Sources of Short term finance : There are many sources through which the short term finance required to business concerns can be raised. The important sources are :

- a) Trade credit :** It is the credit obtained by the suppliers of goods. It is a general practice that the goods are purchased on credit and payment is made in two to three instalments.
- b) Bank credit or Bank loan :** Generally the business houses borrow money from banks for a period of three months to one year. Banks also offer overdraft facility to the business concerns.
- c) Advance from customers :** In some cases the business concerns receive money in advance of supplying the goods.
- d) Short term public deposit or installment credit :** Here the finance is raised from the public for a short term. Sometimes, some assets are purchased on installment system.
- e) Loans from indigenous bankers :** When some urgency arises for the requirement of finance, the business concerns borrow money for a short term from the indigenous bankers or money lenders.

Long term finance : Long term finance refers to finance required for the development programmes such as expansion of the level of

production, modernization of production methods etc., This type of finance is also required for financing the fixed capital of an undertaking. Ex. To procure fixed assets, establishing new undertaking etc.

Long term finance is costlier than the short term finance. That is the rate of interest is high. It is raised against securities. It is raised by Joint Stock Companies, through the issue of shares and debentures. Also raised through term loans from financial institutions.

a) Issue of Shares : The capital of a joint stock company is divided into small units called Shares. To start a joint stock company, the promoters issue shares. Also whenever they need additional capital for long term purpose, the companies raise the funds through issue of shares to the public.

b) Debentures : The joint-stock companies are empowered to borrow finance for meeting long term financial requirements through the issue of Debentures. Debentures are the debts or loans borrowed by the companies. A company under its common seal acknowledges a debt to some persons containing and undertaking to repay the debt after a specified period. A fixed rate of interest is paid to the debenture holders at regular intervals.

a) Financial Institutions : There are some financial institutions developed to provide long term finance to corporate and industrial sectors. The important among them are :

- i) Industrial Finance Corporation of India – IFCI
- ii) State Finance Corporations – SFC's
- iii) Industrial Development Bank of India – IDBI
- iv) Export and Import Bank (Exim Bank)
- v) Scheduled and Commercial Banks
- vi) Co-operative Banks.

i) Industrial Finance Corporation of India (IFCI) : It was set up in 1948 under the act of Parliament to provide long term financial assistance to industry. The Corporation grants loans to public limited companies and to co-operative societies. State owned public limited companies can also borrow funds from the corporation.

ii) State Finance Corporations (SFC's) : State Finance Corporation Act was passed in 1951 by the Parliament to enable the State governments to establish State Finance Corporations. The Act applies to all the states except to Jammu and Kashmir. The main objective of State Finance Corporations is to provide long term finance to small and medium scale industries in their respective states.

iii) Industrial Development Bank of India (IDBI) : It was established in 1964 under the Industrial Development Bank Act 1964. It was fully owned subsidiary Bank of R.B.I. till 1976. In 1976, the ownership was transferred to Central government. It is now functioning as an autonomous body. It renders direct financial assistance of long term to the companies indirectly by purchasing shares and debentures of IFCI and SFC. It also grants loans to IFCI and SFC.

iv) Exim Bank : It is the export and import bank of India. It was set up in 1982. It is a government owned bank and provides financial assistance to exporters and importers. It supports for the establishment of institutions for providing finance to exporters and importers. It also co-ordinates the working of various institutions engaged in financing export and import trade of India.

Apart from the above mentioned financial institutions, the business concerns raise long term finance from commercial banks and credit co-operative banks. They can also raise finance through long term public deposits, Venture capital and mutual funds.

Long term public deposits : A company can accept public deposits to meet long term financial needs. The procedure to get these deposits is simple and does not involve many formalities. A company can accept these deposits for a period not exceeding 5 year (60 months). The deposits are unsecured and 8% to 10% of interest is allowed. The maximum amount that can be raised under public deposit shall not exceed 25% of the paid up capital of the company.

Venture capital : It is a source of fund used to finance new projects involving new technology on production which has high risk but has potential of high returns. The venture capital companies show active interest in technological aspects of the company in addition to supply of capital.

Mutual funds : They are one of the long term financial sources in India. They first appeared in 1964. Today India has a large number of mutual funds set up by both public and private sector undertakings. Mutual fund is a fund sponsored by an institution to mobilize the savings of the community at large and invests them in diversified portfolio of securities. Examples : Unit Trust of India (U.T.I.), S.B.I. Magnum equity fund, LIC growth fund, UTI Market plan, Prudential ICICI balance fund, HDFC income fund, Bajaj allianze etc.,

At international level, Global deposit receipts (G.D.R.), American Deposit Receipt (AMD) play an important role.

b) Capital Markets : They are of two types namely (1) Money market and (2) Capital market.

1) Money market : The term money market is used in a sense to mean financial institution which deals with short term funds in the economy. Money market arranges funds for working capital. Rate of interest is high, compared to the institutions of capital market. The funds can be borrowed under money market for a short period varying from a day, a week, a month or 3 to 6 months against the different types of instruments such as trade bills, bank acceptances, bonds, treasury bills etc. Commercial banks and Indigenous bankers also play an important role in money market.

2) Capital market : It refers to the institutional arrangements for facilitating the borrowing and lending of long term funds for fixed capital. The rate of interest is low when compared to money market. The financial institutions, finance corporations, investment trusts, mutual funds etc. are the leading financial institutions in capital market.

c. Stock Exchange : It is one of the constituents of capital market. A specialized market place that facilitates the exchange of securities that are already in existence is known as Stock Exchange or Stock market. The first Stock exchange originated in London in 1773. In India, the first Stock Exchange was started in Bombay in 1875. At present there are twenty four Stock exchanges in our country. Of them thirteen are public limited companies and six are limited companies by guaranty and others are voluntary profit making organizations. Only eight Stock exchanges are permanent and others have to renew their licence every year.

The Stock exchanges regulate and control business in buying, selling and dealing in securities. They are regulated by the

government. They do not engage only in the purchase and sale of securities but provide a place where members can carry out their business on their own account under codes, rules and regulations.

The National Stock Exchange (NSE) was set up for the purpose of providing a nation wide stock trading facility to investors, so as to bring the Indian financial market in line with international financial markets. It started its operation in the year 1993. Now it uses the electronic trading system and computerized settlement system aimed at extending the facility of electronic trading to every corner of the country. Only the agents can operate the business in the stock exchanges. Share holders have to open a separate account to buy and sell shares. It is called Demat account. Demat account provides security of the shares. Now a days buying and selling of shares is not possible without demat account.

EXERCISES

I. Fill in the blanks with appropriate words in the following statements.

1. Business enterprise require two types of finance, they are _____ and _____.
2. 'The suppliers of goods raise credit from the buyers,' it is called _____.
3. The business concerns raise credit to carry out day to day affairs and is called _____.
4. For immediate needs the business institutions get credit from _____.
5. The capital of joint-stock companies is divided into small units. They are called _____.
6. The bank that supplies credit to import and export trade is called _____.
7. The IFCI was started in the year _____.
8. The first share market of India was started at _____.

II. Answer the following questions in two to three sentences each.

1. What is the meaning of financial management ?

2. Which are the two types of finance required by the business concerns ? Give examples.
3. Mention any four sources of short term credit required by business concerns?
4. Why business concerns require short term finance?
5. What do you mean by long term finance?
6. Give the names of any three organizations in the field of 'Mutual funds'

III. Answer the following questions, each in about eight to ten sentences.

1. What is the role and importance of finance to business concerns?
2. Explain briefly the purposes for which long term finance is required by business concerns?
3. "Issue of shares and debentures play a very important role in long term credit." What are they ? How do they help ?
4. What is the part played by Industrial Finance Corporation (IFC) and State Finance Corporations (SFS) in financing business?
5. What are long term public deposits and what are their advantages to public?
6. What do you mean by Money market and how is it different from capital market?
7. Explain in brief the part played by stock exchange in Financial matters of business.

Activity.

1. Visit a Bank near your place and collect information from the manager, to which business organizations, the bank advances short terms credit and long term credit.
2. Collect information from newspapers about the raise and fall of share value of certain organizations. Also find out why the share value falls in certain cases.

MARKETING MANAGEMENT

We learn about the following in this chapter,

- Market - meaning and types
- Marketing - meaning - functions - importance
- Marketing mix – PRODUCT – PRICE – PLACE - PROMOTION
- Producer – Middle men – Consumers
- Consumer rights and Consumer Forums.

Learning about market and its types is very important before studying about marketing and its components.

Market – Meaning : The term market is derived from the Latin word 'Marcatus', which means trade or a place of business. In ordinary language, the term market refers to a certain place where buyers and sellers personally meet each other and make their purchases and sales. In other words, it is a place where goods are bought and sold.

Kinds of Markets : Markets have been classified into some kinds on the basis of different approaches. Some of them are :

1) On the basis of area

Local market : This type of market is generally limited to a specific local area. Buying and selling is limited to local area only.

Regional market : This type of market is generally restricted to a particular geographical area or state.

National market : These are the markets whose activities are restricted within the boundaries of a particular country.

International market : These are the markets whose marketing activities are carried out among a number of countries.

(2) On the basis of items

Commodity market : In this type of markets different types of commodities such as raw materials, semifinished goods, capital goods and consumer goods are bought and sold.

Money market : It is a specialized market for availing short term finance to business houses.

Capital market : It is a specialized market for availing long term finance to business houses, generally through financial institutions and stock exchanges.

(3) On the basis of Link

- **Primary market :** In this type of markets the producers sell their goods to wholesalers (basically agricultural products)
- **Secondary market :** This is the market where wholesalers sell their goods to the retailers.
- **Terminal market :** This is the market where retailers sell goods to the ultimate consumers.

4. On the basis of volume of business

- **Wholesale market :** In this type of market goods are sold in huge quantities to the retailers.
- **Retail market :** In this type of market goods are sold in small quantities to the ultimate consumers.

5. On the basis of nature of transactions

- **Spot market :** In this type of market goods are sold to the buyers on the spot where the sellers agree to sell their products and buyers agree to buy them for consideration.
- **Future market :** In this type of market goods are transferred at a later date.

6. On the basis of nature of goods

- **Consumer market :** In this type of market goods are purchased for personal consumption.
- **Producers markets :** In this type of markets goods are purchased for the use in the further process of production.

7. On the basis of Regulation

- **Regulated markets :** These markets are regulated by statutory regulations.

- **Non-regulated or free markets :** These markets are not controlled by statutory measures. They operate freely.

There are a few other kinds also. You will learn about them in higher classes.

Traditional and Non Traditional markets : Traditional markets : refer to oldest form of marketing under which the goods are exchanged on some predetermined basis. It generally reflects to traditional place concept. It includes market on the basis of area, potential buyers and sellers, volume and nature of goods.

Non-Traditional markets : These markets do not have a fixed place, the purchases and sales are carried out from different places. They generally include

- Mail order houses
- Tele shopping
- Virtual stores
- Catalogue market

MARKETING

Meaning : Marketing is a broader term than market. It involves all the activities which results in the flow of goods and services from the producers to the consumers.

Philip Kotler defined marketing as “a human activity directed at satisfying the needs and wants through an exchange process”.

American Marketing Association defines marketing as “Marketing is the performance of business activity that directs the flow of goods and services from producers to consumars or users.”

From the above definitions, it is clear that marketing does not confine itself to physical distribution of goods and services but it is the consumer orientation of all the marketing activities.

Functions of marketing : Marketing involves many functions. Some of the major functions of marketing are :-

1. Buying and assembling.
2. Selling.
3. Transportation.
4. Storage and warehousing.
5. Market research.
6. Standardization.
7. Grading.
8. Branding.
9. Insurance.

1. **Buying and assembling** : Buying in marketing implies buying of goods by the manufacturers for use in production or buying of goods from middle men for resale. It is not buying of goods by the consumers for consumption. Assembling is a function which starts after buying is over. Usually goods are purchased from a number of suppliers who are spread out in different places. The goods purchased at different places have to be collected at one central place. It is known as assembling.
2. **Selling** : It is the end function of marketing. It is concerned with disposing or transferring of goods by sale from the seller to the buyer at a profitable price. The creation, maintenance or expansion of market for a product is also included in selling.
3. **Transportation** : Transportation is an integral part of marketing. It creates time and place utility and adds the value to the goods. It involves in selection of a particular mode of transport depending upon the speed and cost.
4. **Storage and ware housing** : It refers to preserving of the goods between the time of production and the time of sale. Storing of goods is facilitated by ware housing.
5. **Market research** : It is a method of discovering all potential trend and demand.
6. **Standardization** : Standardization is determining the quality and setting of standards for manufactured products. Standards convey ideas relating to the uniformity to the external appearances and internal content of the product. It facilitates purchase and sale of goods.
7. **Grading** : It is a process of sorting out products on the basis of some established criteria. Grading widens the market, helps in price fixation. It also assures the consumers the assured standard quality at a reasonable price.
8. **Branding** : This is the act of fixing a symbol or some letter to a product to distinguish it from the products of others. Branding brings down selling costs, widens the market and creates a demand for a particular or branded 'product'. Brand should be duly registered under the Trade Marks Act. The letter 'R' within

a circle on each product and package indicates that the selected brand is duly registered. Others cannot use this brand name. If used legal action can be taken. e.g. : Reebok shoes, Rin soap, Parker pen etc.

- 9. Insurance :** This is another important function of marketing. There are many risks involved in marketing. Insurance provides security against all types of insurable risks and helps them to overcome uncertainty in business, It protects the businessman against losses

IMPORTANCE OF MARKETING

Marketing plays a vital role in the growth of a nation. Its contribution to the economic development of a country is very significant. The following reasons may be given for the importance of marketing.

Standard of living : Availability and consumption of various types of products and services increase the standard of living of the people.

Consumer satisfaction : Marketing of variety of goods and services provides opportunity to consume many new types of products by consumers. It directly increases the consumer satisfaction and encourages production also.

Employment opportunity : Many institutions are involved in the process of marketing. For example manufacturers wholesalers, retailers, transport agencies, banks, insurance logistic, transcribing and supply chain management agencies etc., in the course of executing marketing activities. These activities create employment opportunities in the country and reduce unemployment to some extent.

Resources : Marketing activities ensure optimum use of resources to produce goods and services. It enables to satisfy various needs of the consumers.

International Marketing : Marketing involves not only domestic trade but also making the products available, beyond the boundaries of a nation, International marketing brings foreign exchange and also strengthens the relationship between nations.

Economic development : Planned allocation of resources add job opportunities which leads to higher standard of living and increases

income and savings level of the people and bring overall economic development.

MARKETING MIX

Meaning : Formulation and implementing the methods of marketing is referred as 'Marketing Mix'. The concept of Marketing Mix was first introduced by Prof. N.H. Borden of Hardware Business School of America. According to him the marketing mix refers to two lists :

- List of important elements that make up the marketing programme.
- List of forces having the marketing operations.

The elements of marketing mix are made up of four forces namely

Product mix, Price mix, Promotion mix and Place mix.

Marketing mix is important because of the following reasons:

- Marketing mix helps the firm to increase its sales and profit.
- Marketing mix represents the integral approach to marketing by maintaining balance among various elements which are interrelated.
- Marketing mix serves as a link between the firm and its customers.
- Marketing mix helps in pursuing customer oriented marketing. There by increases the satisfaction of the customers.
- Marketing mix helps to meet the needs of the customers.

Let us know in brief about the four forces of marketing mix.

1. Product Mix : It is a very important and vital element of the marketing mix. It means the different alternative combinations of the features relating to the product to be offered for sale. It includes service mix also. The producer aims at producing quality products but emphasis is also given to the variety of the product, design of the product, packaging, colour and other features under the product mix. Consumer satisfaction is also aimed at through product mix. Grading , Branding and labeling are also included in product mix.

2. Price Mix : Price is the value which a consumer spends in exchange of a product. It is the combination or process of facing the price of a product keeping in mind, the cost of the product. The discount if any to be offered, allowances and also the credit period and terms of payment to be allowed.

3. Place Mix : This mix represents the various acts undertaken by the concern to make its product available in the market. It gives emphasis on all distribution channels. It includes transfer of ownership of the product to the actual consumers. Moving of the product from one place to another for the consumer's choice also comes under the scope of place mix.

4. Promotion Mix : it is also called communication mix. This mix refers to the activities undertaken by the sellers to promote the product among the prospective buyers. Promotion mix includes advertising, salesmanship, sales promotion and publicity. In simple words all the activities done to pursue customers to buy the product come under the scope of Promotion mix.

Role of Producer - Middlemen and Consumers in the exchange of Goods

Distribution channel plays an important role in place mix of marketing. Distribution channel includes the exchange of goods and transfer of ownership from the producer to consumers.

The distribution channel can be classified mainly into two categories. They are :

- Direct distribution or Direct selling
- Indirect distribution or indirect selling.

Under direct selling the goods are sold by the producer directly to the consumers.

Ex : Bata shoes, Raymond outlets etc.,

Under Indirect selling, we have the following distribution channels.

1. Producer → Retailer → Consumer
2. Producer → Wholesaler → Retailer → Consumer

3. Producer → Agent → Wholesaler → Retailer → Consumer

4. Producer → Wholesaler → Consumer

1. Producer → Retailer → Consumer : Under this system of distribution, producer sells goods to the retailers, who in turn sells them directly to consumers. Generally under this channel of distribution goods of high value and durable articles are included. Ex : Ready made garments, automobile accessories. Retailers are only the middlemen here.

2. Producer → Wholesaler → Retailer → Consumer : Under this channel of distribution, two middlemen come into picture. Goods are sold in huge quantities to the wholesalers, who sell the products to the retailers in small quantity and then the retailers sell the products to the consumers in small quantities.

Ex : Distribution of groceries, drugs, hardware, stationery etc.

Here the wholesalers provide strong promotional support.

3. Producers → Agent → Retailers → Consumers : Under this channel of distribution, there are limited number of retailers. The producers appoint agents who go to the retailers and sell the products directly to them. In return the retailers sell them to the consumers. This type of channel is used to distribute industrial products or agricultural products.

4. Producer → Agent → Wholesaler → Retailer → Consumer : This channel of distribution is the longest and complete distribution channel. Under this channel, the goods are first sold to agents, who after adding their profit sell to the wholesalers, who also add their profit and sell it to the retailers and finally retailers sell the goods to the consumers.

Role of Middlemen in the channel of distribution

The distribution channel of a product begins with the producers and ends with the consumers. In between producer and the final consumer various middlemen are included. They either purchase and sell goods or negotiate purchases and sales. However transporting agents, banks, insurance companies which also help in the movement of goods are not included in the distribution channel. This is because though these agencies perform certain

functions of marketing, they neither purchase nor sell the goods or negotiate the purchases and sales of goods. There are merchant middle men (Wholesalers and retailers) who take the title of the goods but the agent middlemen (mercantile agents, bookers etc.) who do not take the title of goods but negotiate purchases and sales are included in the channel of distribution as middlemen. The channel of distribution to be selected depends on the availability, attitude, cost and potential of the middlemen. More the middlemen, more would be cost of the product. So the best way of channel distribution should be selected.

Consumer rights and the functions of consumer forums :

Consumer : Consumer is a person who buys goods or hires or avails services for a consideration called Price or wages. The goods purchased may be for self consumption or meant for resale or for a commercial purpose (Any activity or transaction carried on with the motive of making profit is a commercial purpose). Every consumer has certain wants. He buys goods to satisfy his wants. It is the duty of every producer to satisfy the needs of the consumers. Ours is a free enterprise economy and consumer is regarded as the king and occupies a prime place. But unfortunately many a time the consumers are neglected, exploited and cheated. They suffer heavily.

a) Consumer protection : It refers to protection to consumers against the exploitation by the producers and traders. There is a great need for consumer protection. To safeguard the interests of consumers, consumer rights are assured.

b) Consumer rights : Many Regulatory Acts have been passed in our country to provide an opportunity for the consumers to seek redresses of their grievances. Some of them are (1) Indian Contracts Act-1872 (2) The sale of goods Act-1930 (3) Indian Standards Institutions Act-1952 (4) Essential Commodities Act-1955 (5) The Consumer Protection Act-1986.

To comply with the Guidelines adopted by the United Nations, to protect the interests of the consumers, the Government of India passed the Consumers Protection Act in 1986. It came into force from 1987. It was amended in 1992, 1993 and 2002.

The Consumer Protection Act extends to the whole of India except Jammu and Kashmir. It applies to all goods and services. The Act promotes the rights of consumers such as :

- The right to be protected against the marketing of goods which are hazardous to life and property.
- The right to information – information about the quality, quantity, purity, standard etc. to protect the consumers against unfair trade practices.
- Right to choice : Where ever possible access to variety of goods at competitive prices.
- Right to be heard : The interests of the consumers to be heard with due consideration.
- Right to seek redressal : Against the unfair trade practices or unscrupulous exploitation.
- Right to consumer education : The consumers are to be educated about their rights.
- Right to stop exploitation.
- Right to healthy environment that is good physical environment will enhance the quality of their life.

The Consumer Protection Act provides for the establishment of Central Protection Council, at National level, State Consumer Protection Council at State level. District Consumer protection council at the District level. These councils are formed in accordance with the jurisdiction and the minister in charge of consumer affairs in the Central Government is the chairman of National council. The minister in charge of consumer affairs is the chairman at the state level. The District Collector is the Chairman at district level.

Consumer disputes redressal Agencies

The Consumer Protection Act provides for the establishment of consumer disputes redressal agencies such as :

- (1) District forum (2) State Commission (3) National Commission.

1) District Forum : There shall be a forum at each district. A qualified district judge nominated by the state government is its president. It entertains the complaints where the value of goods or services is less than 20 lakhs. There shall be two members of whom one shall be a woman.

2) The State Commission : A person who is or has been a High Court Judge is its president. There shall be two other eminent members, who have adequate knowledge relating to consumer affairs. It entertains complaints of exceeding 20 lakhs but not more than one crore. Of the two members one shall be a woman.

3) The National Commission : It is headed by a Judge of Supreme Court to be appointed by the Central government as President. There shall be other four members of eminence, integrity and standing. Of them one shall be a woman. National Commission shall dispose of any complaints where the claim shall exceed one crore.

EXERCISES

I. Fill in the blanks with appropriate words in the following statements.

1. The place where sellers and buyers meet to sell and buy the goods is generally called _____.
2. The market that is generally restricted to a geographical region is called _____ market.
3. The markets that are regulated by statutory regulations are called _____ Markets.
4. Storing of goods between the time of production and the time of sale is facilitated by _____.
5. The activities that persuade customers to buy the products come under the scope of _____ mix.
6. The best example for the goods sold by the producers directly to the consumer is _____.

7. For all the brand registered products, on packages _____ is indicated.
8. The assurance of the standard quality of product to consumers is assured by _____ of goods.

II. Answer each of the following questions in a sentences or two.

1. Mention the four types of markets classified under the basis of area.
2. What are money markets? How are they different from capital markets?
3. What are producers markets what are consumers markets?
4. What is a spot market and how is it different from future market?
5. Mention any four types of non-traditional markets.
6. What do you mean by marketing mix?
7. Why is consumer protection required?
8. What is branding of goods?

III. Answer each of the following questions in about eight to ten sentences.

1. What are the functions of marketing? Explain any one function briefly?
2. What are the forces of marketing mix? Explain any one force?
3. What are distribution channel under indirect selling ?
4. What is the importance of marketing? How does marketing help in improvement of standard of living ?

IV. Activity.

- 1) Collect labels of about ten items and list out the particulars under the following columns.

Sl. No.	Name of the product.	Particulars.	Date of manufacturing. Date of expiry. Maximum Retail price.

- 2) Collect any two consumer disputes which appear in Newspapers. Write about the decision pronounced by the consumer forum.

ACCOUNTING IN BUSINESS

We learn about the following in this chapter,

- meaning and definition of Accounting.
- Need for accounting in business.
- Meaning of account and rules for debiting and crediting each type of accounts.
- Recording of business transactions in journal and ledger.
- Position of assets and liabilities of a business concern.
- Finally the result of a business concern for a period.

Meaning and definitions of Accounting

Accounting is identifying and measuring business transactions in a set of books so as to measure the business transactions in terms of money or money's worth, analyzing and interpreting the results there off.

In general accounting may be called the systematic record of business transactions to know the result of the business.

Definitions of Accounting

1. The American Institute of Certified Public Accounts (AICPA) defined accounting as "the art of recoding, classifying and summerising in a significant manner and in terms of money, transactions and events which are, in part atleast, of a financial character and interpreting the results there off".
2. American Accounting Association (A.A.A.) defined accounting as "the process of identifying, measuring and communicating economic information to permit informed judgements and decisions by users of the information".

Features of Accounting

1. Accounting is both a science and an art. It is science because it has certain definite methods and regulations. It is an art because it follows certain methods to fulfil the objectives.

2. Accounting identifies the business transactions.
3. Accounting shows the value of business transactions in terms of money.
4. Accounting classifies the business transactions and records them in their respective accounts.
5. Accounting briefs the business transactions and after getting required information from ledger prepares, final accounts, namely trading and profit and loss account and balance sheet.
6. Accounting helps the business to take necessary decisions by showing the result of the business.

Need for Accounting : “Profit to the business is like food to the body” (W.C.F. Heartly). Every business concern is started to earn profit. The concern earns profit through the transactions of the business, such as purchase of goods, sale of goods, receipt of incomes, expenses, incurring losses etc, to know the result of all these things is very important. It is necessary to know the net profit earned or the loss suffered. It is also required to know the amounts due by the firm to others or due to the firm by others. For all these purposes it is very essential to write down accounts. To illustrate a simple example of a village milk maid, she sells milk to some customers. When ever she sells the milk of a measure, say a litre or half, she marks a line for onelitre and half line for half litre. At the week end she counts the lines of a customer and accordingly collects money. When a village milk maid maintains account in this manner, imagine a business firm which deals with so many customers. This is the importance of maintaing accounts.

Advantages or benefits of maintaing Accounts.

- Accounting records of a business concern are the permanent records of trnsactions relating to its income and expenditure.
- Accounting records provide full information about business transactions.
- Accounting helps a business concern to compare results of the business from year to year.

- Accounting helps to ascertain the financial position of a business concern.
- Accounting helps a business concern to know the amount due to others and amount due from others.
- Accounts are the documentary evidence required to prove the status of business concern to government or to other agencies as and when required. Accounts are required even in case of legal matters.
- Accounting records and reports help the management of a concern in its future planning and decision making process.

Types of maintaining Accounts (Accounting Systems)

Debit and credit play a very important role in accounting. The art of recording the debit and credit aspects in account of books is termed as **Book-keeping**. The book in which Debit and Credit aspects are recorded is called ledger.

There are two systems of Book-keeping

1. Double - Entry System.
2. Single - Entry System.

Double - Entry System : Every business transaction involves two aspects. One aspect gives the benefit and another aspect receives the benefit. Both these aspects are to be recorded in books. For every aspect there is an account in ledger. Every ledger account has two sides (specimen is given) one account receives the benefit and another account gives the benefit. While entering the aspects we enter two aspects on opposite sides. This system is called Double entry system. For example : Goods sold for cash. Here cash account receives the benefit and sales account gives the benefit. The aspects are entered on two opposite sides. Cash account receives the benefit, it is entered on one side and goods sales account gives the benefit it is entered in goods sales account on opposite side. In benefit received account, the entry is made on Debit side and in benefit given account the entry is made on Credit side. It is modern and scientific method of maintaining accounts.

Single - entry System : Some business concerns maintain their accounts under Single-Entry system. Here only one aspect of the transaction is taken into consideration. Some aspects are recorded in two accounts, some are recorded in one side and some aspects are not recorded at all. Here the full picture of the complete business transactions is not available. Hence most of the business concerns follow Double - entry system.

The procedure of maintaining accounts under Double - Entry System:

- a) The day to-day business transactions are entered in Rough book as and when it take place.
- b) The transactions entered in rough book are analysed so as to which account has to be debited and which account has to be credited. Next, Journal entries are passed of the specimen is given below.

Specimen of Journal

Date	Particulars	Ledger folio	Debit amount (in Rs....)	Credit amount (in Rs....)
.....	..... a/c - Dr To..... a/c (Being)	- -	* * * * *	* * * * *

Since the full particulars of the transactions are recorded first in the Journal. It is called the book of original entry.

(Note : Abbreviation 'Dr' is used for Debit and 'Cr' in used for credit)

- c) The Journal entries are then transferred to the respective ledger accounts.
- d) After a particular period or when ever required the balance of ledger accounts is found out. The balance of account is the difference between Debit and Credit side.

- e) The list of all the balances of all the accounts is prepared. It is called Trial Balance.
- f) After the preparation of Trial balance, final accounts are prepared. Final accounts are divided into three parts.
 - a) Trading Account.
 - b) Profit and Loss account.

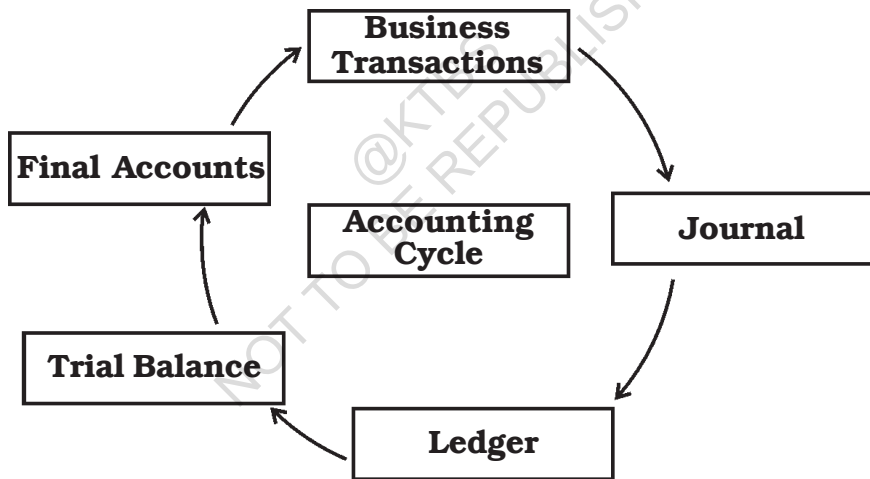
(Generally these two accounts are clubbed together)

ex. : Trading and Profit and Loss account of for the year ending

- c) Balance sheet : Here the list of all Liabilities and assets are Listed out.

The recoding of all the transactions is called Accounting cycle.

Accounting Cycle



Kinds of Accounts : Accounts are clasified into three types. They are :

1. Personal Accounts
2. Real Accounts
3. Nominal Accounts

Personal Accounts : The ledger accounts which are maintained to record the transactions carried out with persons or firms are called Personal Accounts. Ex : Suresh's a/c, x co's a/c. etc., Bank a/c.

Real Accounts : The ledger accounts that are maintained by the business concerns to record the assets which the firm possesses. ex : Building's a/c, Cash a/c, Furniture a/c, Machinery a/c. etc.,

Nominal Accounts : The business concerns have to maintain separate accounts for the profits or incomes it earns and for losses or expenses it incurs. These accounts are called Nominal Accounts. Ex : Rent a/c, Salaries a/c, interest a/c, commission a/c, Rates & Taxes a/c, Insurance Premium paid etc.,

Rules for Debiting and Crediting different types of Accounts

We have already learnt that the business concerns maintain three kinds of accounts. Now let us know the rules to Debit (Dr) and Credit (Cr) these accounts.

Please know :

In ledger account for Debit 'Dr' is used and for credit 'Cr' is used.

Personal Account : Debit the benefit receiver's a/c and credit the benefit giver's account. **Debit the receiver and credit the giver.**

Real accounts : If asset comes in Debit to that asset account and if any asset goes out credit to that asset account. **Debit what comes in and credit what goes out.**

Nominal Accounts : Debit the account which incurs loss or expenditure and Credit the account which receives any profit or income. **Debit all losses or expenses and Credit all profits or gains.**

Examples regarding the rules as mentioned above

1. Rajan started business with cash Rs. 80,000. The two accounts of this transaction are (a) Cash a/c and (b) Capital a/c. cash a/c is real a/c. Cash a/c receives the benefit so. Cash a/c has to be debited. That means it has to be entered on debit side of cash account. The amt. brought to start business is capital. Capital a/c is a personal a/c. Capital is the giver so. Capital account has to be credited. That means it has to be entered on the credit side of capital account.

Please know :

The amount brought to start business is called capital. Capital a/c. comes under personal account.

2. Cash remitted to Bank Rs. 50,000. The two accounts of this transaction are Bank a/c and Cash a/c. Bank a/c is a personal a/c. It receives the benefit so Bank a/c has to be debited. That means one aspect of this transaction has to be entered on the debit side. Cash a/c is a real account. Cash goes out. The rule is credit what goes out and therefore cash account has to be credited, that means

in cash account the second aspect of this transaction has to be entered on the credit side.

Accounting Entries : Method with brief explanation.

Mr. Rajan started a business. The following transactions took place and entries are made in rough book as follows :

Transaction Number	Date	Transactions	Amount is Rs.
1.	2012, Sept. 1	Started business with cash	1,00,000
2.	2012, Sept. 1	Bought goods for cash	20,000
3.	2012, Sept. 2	Amount remitted to Bank	50,000
4.	2012, Sept. 2	Bought goods from Mohan	20,000
5.	2012, Sept. 4	Bought furniture for cash	10,000
6.	2012, Sept. 4	Paid for Stationery	1,000
7.	2012, Sept. 5	Sold goods for cash	8,000
8.	2012, Sept. 5	Sold goods to Rangaraj	4,000
9.	2012, Sept. 6	Cash sent to Mohan	5,000
10.	2012, Sept. 8	Amount received from Rangaraj	4,000
11.	2012, Sept. 10	Bought goods from Rangaraj	6,000
12.	2012, Sept. 15	Paid for Postage	150
13.	2012, Sept. 20	Returned goods to Mohan	2,000
14.	2012, Sept. 20	Paid for transportation charges	800
15.	2012, Sept. 25	Paid wages to workers	2,500
16.	2012, Sept. 28	Paid salary to the manager	2,500
17.	2012, Sept. 30	Sent money to Rangaraj	2,000

All these transactions of Rough book are to be entered into Journal. Before entering the transactions into Journal (Passing Journal entries) we must first know the two accounts of the transaction, as per rules which account has to be debited and which account has to be credited and then Journal entry has to be passed. Full explanation is given in the next page.

Note :

- At the bottom of each Journal entry brief explanation has to be written.
- For Debit abbreviation '**Dr**' is used and for credit abbreviation '**Cr**' is used.

Transaction No. Transaction Two accounts & Debit and Credit effect

1) Rajan started business with Cash

1) Cash a/c-Real a/c - comes in debit

2) Capital a/c-Personal a/c-given-credit

So, Journal entry would be cash a/c-Dr. - Capital a/c - Cr.

Journal Entry

Transaction	Date	Particulars	L.F.	Debit Amt.	Cr.
1)	2012 Sept. 1	Cash a/c Dr. To capital a/c. (Being started business with cash)		1,00,000	1,00,000

2) Bought goods for cash

(1) Goods purchases-come in-Debit

So, Journal would be goods purchases a/c to be debited

(2) Cash a/c-Real a/c-goes out-credit

Cash a/c has to be credited.

Journal Entry

2)	2012 Sept. 2	Goods purchases a/c... Dr. To Cash a/c (Being goods purchased for cash)		20,000	20,000
----	-----------------	---	--	--------	--------

3) Amount remitted to Bank

(1) Bank a/c-Personal a/c-Receiver-Debit

So, Journal would be Bank a/c to be debited and cash a/c to be credited.

(2) Cash a/c-Real a/c-goes out credit

Journal Entry

3)	2012 Sept. 2	Bank a/c. Dr To cash a/c.... (Being cash paid into Bank)		50,000	50,000
----	-----------------	---	--	--------	--------

- 4) Bought-goods from Mohan (a) goods purchases-Real a/c-comes in-Debit
 So, Journal would be goods purchases a/c to be debited (b) Mohans a/c-Personal a/c-giver-credit
 Mohan's a/c to be credited

Journal Entry

4)	2012 Sept. 2	Goods purchases a/c.... Dr To Mohan's a/c. (Being goods purchased from Mohan)		20,000	20,000
----	-----------------	---	--	--------	--------

- 5) Bought furniture for cash. (a) furniture a/c-Real a/c-comes in-Dr.
 (b) cash a/c - Real a/c - goes out - Cr.
 Journal would be furniture a/c to be debited cash a/c to be credited.

Journal Entry

5)	2012 Sept. 2	Furniture a/c.... Dr. To cash a/c. (Being bought furniture for cash)		10,000	10,000
----	-----------------	--	--	--------	--------

- 6) Bought stationery (a) Stationery a/c-Nominal a/c-Expenditure Dr.
 (b) Cash a/c- Real a/c goes out-Cr.
 Journal would be stationery a/c to be debited cash a/c to be credited.

Journal Entry

6)	2012 Sept. 4	Stationery a/c.... Dr. To cash a/c. (Being stationery purchased for cash)		1,000	1,000
----	-----------------	---	--	-------	-------

- 7) Sold goods for cash (a) Cash a/c - Real a/c - comes in - Dr.
 (b) Goods sales - Real a/c - goes out - Cr.
 Journal would be cash a/c to be debited,
 goods sales a/c to be credited

Journal Entry

7)	2012 Sept. 2	Cash a/c Dr. To goods sales a/c (Being sold goods for cash)		8,000	8,000
----	-----------------	---	--	-------	-------

- 8) Sold goods to Rangaraj (a) Goods Sales a/c-Real a/c-goes out - Cr.
(b) Rangaraj's a/c-Personal a/c-receives benefit - Dr.

Journal entry would be Rangaraj's a/c to be debited
Sales a/c to be credited

Journal Entry

8)	2012 Sept. 5	Rangaraj's a/c.... Dr. To goods sales a/c. (Being goods sold to Rangaraj)		4,000	4,000
----	-----------------	---	--	-------	-------

- 9) Cash sent to Mohan (a) Mohan's a/c-Personal a/c-Receives the benefit-Dr.
(b) Cash a/c-Real a/c-goes-out-Cr.

Journal would be Mohan's a/c to be debited
Cash a/c to be credited

Journal Entry

9)	2012 Sept. 6	Mohan's a/c.... Dr.... To Cash a/c. (Being cash sent to Mohan)		5,000	55,000
----	-----------------	--	--	-------	--------

- 10) Cash Received from Rangaraj : (1) Rangaraj a/c-Personal a/c-benefit given Cr
(2) Cash a/c-Real a/c-Come in Dr.

Journal would be Rangaraj's a/c to be credited
Cash a/c to be debited

Journal Entry

10)	2012 Sept. 8	Cash a/c.... Dr To Rangaraj's a/c.... (Being Cash received from Rangaraj)		4,000	4,000
-----	-----------------	---	--	-------	-------

- 11) Bought good from Rangaraj (1) Purchases a/c-Real a/c-comes in-Dr.
(2) Rangaraj a/c-Personal a/c-gives benefit-cr.

Journal would be goods purchases account to be debited
Rangaraj's a/c to be credited.

Journal Entry

11)	2012 Sept. 10	Goods purchases a/c... Dr. To Rangaraj (Being Purchased goods from Rangaraj)		6,000	6,000
-----	------------------	--	--	-------	-------

- 12) Paid for postage : (1) Postage a/c-Nominal a/c-expenses-Dr.
(2) Cash a/c-Real a/c-goesout-Cr.

Journal would be Postage a/c to be debited
cash a/c to be credited.

Journal Entry

12)	2012 Sept. 15	Postage a/c.... Dr. To cash a/c. (Being Paid for postage)		150	150
-----	------------------	--	--	-----	-----

- 13) Returned goods to Mohan : (1) Mohan a/c-Personal a/c - Receives benefit Dr.
(2) Goods returns a/c-Real a/c-goes out - Cr

Journal would be Mohan's a/c to be debited
goods returns a/c to be credited.

Journal Entry

13)	2012 Sept. 20	Mohan's a/c.... Dr. To goods returns a/c (Being goods returned to Mohan)		2,000	2,000
-----	------------------	---	--	-------	-------

- 14) Paid for transportation : (1) Transportation a/c-Nominal a/c-Expense-Dr.
(2) Cash a/c-Real a/c-goes out-Cr.

Journal would be Transportation expenses a/c to be debited and
cash a/c. to be credited.

Journal Entry

14)	2012 Sept. 20	Transportation Expenses a/c Dr. To Cash a/c. (Being paid for Trasportation)		800	800
-----	------------------	---	--	-----	-----

- 15) Paid wages to workers. (1) Wages a/c-Nominal a/c-expenses-Dr
(2) Cash a/c-Real a/c-goes out-Cr.

Journal would be wages a/c to be debited, cash a/c to be credited.

Journal Entry

15)	2012 Sept. 25	Wages a/c... Dr. To cash a/c. (Being paid Wages)		2,500	2,500
-----	------------------	--	--	-------	-------

- journal would be Salaries a/c to be debited
Cash a/c to be credited.

16)	2012	Salary a/c.... Dr.		2,500	
	Sept. 28	To Cash a/c.			2,500
		(Being paid salary)			

- Journal would be Rangaraj's a/c to be debited
Cash a/c. to be credited.

17)	2012 Sept. 30	Rangaraj's a/c... Dr. To Cash a/c. (Being cash sent to Rangaraj)	2,000	2,000
-----	------------------	---	-------	-------

We have already learnt that after passing Journal entries, the two aspects of the transactions are to be entered into ledger. Ledger is a record of all the accounts of the business concerns (Personal accounts, Real accounts and Nominal accounts) Ledger account is divided into two sides. On left hand side the Debit entries are recorded and on right hand side the Credit entries are recorded. The specimen form of Ledger is given below.

Dr.	a/c.	Cr.
------------	-------	-------------	------------

Date	Particulars	J.F	Amount in Rs.	Date	Particulars	J.F	Amount in Rs.
Date of the transaction is entered in this column.	The name of the account to which the credit aspect is recorded is entered here.	The page of Journal is entered	The amount to be Debited is entered here.	Date of the Transaction is entered here in this column.	The name of the account to which Debit aspect is recorded is entered here.	The page of the Journal is entered	The amount to be credited is entered here

Transfer of Journal entries of Rajan to Ledger.

Note : To record the particulars column of Debit side, to which account, the credit aspect of the transaction is affected is entered and on the credit side to which account the debit aspect is affected is entered. Prefix 'To' in the debit side and 'By' in the credit side is added.

Ex. : To Raman's a/c - Debit side,
By cash a/c - Credit side.

Balancing of Ledger accounts :

After a particular period or as and when required the business concerns should know their financial position or stability. For this purpose the accounts that are maintained in ledger have to be balanced. Balancing of ledger is called striking the balance.

The procedure to balance the ledger is as follows :

- The totals of both sides of the account are noted.
- The total of higher side is shown at the bottom of the amounts on the same line in both sides. Leave some space in between the amounts and total.
- The difference between the higher side and lesser side is found out. This difference is called the balance of that account.
- It is shown in the lesser side in the space left. 'To balance c/f or 'by balance c/f' is written in the particulars column. If the debit side is higher it is debit balance and if the credit side is higher it is the credit balance.
- This balance is carried forward for next period.

Note :

Goods account appears as goods purchases account and goods sales account. So also goods returns account as purchases returns account and sales returns account. These accounts are not balanced but taken as purchases a/c, sales a/c, purchases returns a/c, sales returns a/c and shown in trial balance.

As has already explained the amount received against sales and the amount paid for purchases, the value of goods returned against

sales (returns in wards) against purchases (returns out wards) only are taken into account in the ledger. A list of all the balances of all ledger accounts is prepared. It is called "Trail balance". The totals both sides of Trial balance must be equal. Then only we can say the ledger entries are correct.

Dr. Cash account Cr.

Date	Particulars	J.F	Amount in Rs.	Date	Particulars	J.F	Amount in Rs.
2012 1 Sept. 1	To Capital a/c.	10	1,00,000	2012 Sept. 1	By goods		
2012 S. 5	To Goods sales a/c	12	8000	2012 S. 2	By Purchaeses a/c.	10	20,000
2012 S. 8	To Rangaraj's a/c	8	4000	2012 S. 4	By Bank a/c.	11	50,000
				2012 S. 4	By Furniture a/c.	11	10,000
				2012 S. 4	By Stationery a/c.	12	1000
				2012 S. 6	By Mohan's a/c		5000
				2012-S.15	By Postage a/c.	13	150
				2012-S.20	By Transportation charges a/c.	14	800
				2012 S. 25	By Wages a/c.	14	2500
				2012 S. 28	By Salaries a/c.	14	2500
				2012 S.30	By Rangaraj's a/c.	14	2000
					By Balance c/f.		18050
			112000				112000
2012 S.16	To balance b/f		18050				

Dr. Capital a/c. Cr.

Date	Particulars	J.F	Amount in Rs.	Date	Particulars	J.F	Amount in Rs.
			1,00,000	2012 S-1	By Cash a/c.	11,10	1,00,000
			1,00,000				1,00,000
	To bal c/f				By bal. b/f.		1,00,000

Dr. Goods Purchases a/c. Cr.

Date	Particulars	J.F	Amount in Rs.	Date	Particu-lars	J.F	Amount in Rs.
2012 S 2	To Cash a/c.	110	20,000				
2012 S 2	" Mohan's a/c.	11	20,000				
2012 S10	" Rangaraj's a/c.	13	6,000				
			46,000				

Dr. **Goods Sales a/c.** **Cr.**

Date	Particulars	J.F	Amount in Rs.	Date	Particulars	J.F	Amount in Rs.
				2012S.5	By Cash a/c.	12	8,000
				2012S.5	" Rangaraj a/c.	12	4,000
							12,000

Dr. **Bank a/c.** **Cr.**

Date	Particulars	J.F	Amount in Rs.	Date	Particulars	J.F	Amount in Rs.
2012 S.2	To Cash a/c.		50,000		By Balance c/f		50,000
			50,000				50,000
	To balance b/f		50,000				

Dr. **Mohan's a/c.** **Cr.**

Date	Particulars	J.F	Amount in Rs.	Date	Particulars	J.F	Amount in Rs.
2012 S.6	To Cash a/c.	12	5,000	2012S.6	By Goods Purchases a/c.	11	20,000
2012 S.20	By Goods returns a/c.	14	2,000				
	To Balance c/f		13,000				
			2,0000				20,000
					By Balance b/f		13,000

Dr. **Furniture a/c.** **Cr.**

Date	Particulars	J.F	Amount in Rs.	Date	Particulars	J.F	Amount in Rs.
2012 S.4	To Cash a/c.	11	10,000		By Balance c/f.		10,000
			10,000				10,000
	To balance b/f.		10,000				

Dr. Stationery a/c. Cr.

Date	Particulars	J.F	Amount in Rs.	Date	Particulars	J.F	Amount in Rs.
2012S.4	To Cash a/c.	12	1,000		By Balance c/f.		1,000
			1,000				1,000
	To balance b/f.		1,000				

Dr. Rangaraj's a/c. Cr.

Date	Particulars	J.F	Amount in Rs.	Date	Particulars	J.F	Amount in Rs.
2012S.5	To cash a/c.	12	4,000	2012S.8	By cash a/c.	13	4,000
2012S.10	" Cash a/c.	14	2,000	2012S.10	" Goods purchases a/c.	13	6,000
	" Balance c/f.		4,000				
			10,000				10,000
					By bal. b/f.		4,000

Dr. Postage a/c. Cr.

Date	Particulars	J.F	Amount in Rs.	Date	Particulars	J.F	Amount in Rs.
2012S.5	To cash a/c.	13	150		By balance c/f.		150
			150				150
	To balance b/f.		150				

Dr. Goods Returns a/c. Cr.

Date	Particulars	J.F	Amount in Rs.	Date	Particulars	J.F	Amount in Rs.
				2012S.9	By Mohan's a/c.		2,000
			****				2,000

Dr. Wages a/c. Cr.

Date	Particulars	J.F	Amount in Rs.	Date	Particulars	J.F	Amount in Rs.
2012S.20	To cash a/c.	14	2,500		By balance c/f.		2,500
			2,500				2,500
	To balance b/f.		2,500				

Dr. Salaries a/c. Cr.

Date	Particulars	J.F	Amount in Rs.	Date	Particulars	J.F	Amount in Rs.
2012S.29	To cash a/c.	14	2,500		By Balance b/f		2,500
			2,500				2,500
	To balance c/f.		2,500				

The Trial Balance of Rajan for the month ending of Sept is as follows.

Trial Balance

Sl.No.	Particulars	Dr. Balance Rs.	Cr. Balance Rs.
1)	Capital a/c.		1,00,000
2)	Cash a/c.	18,050	
3)	Bank a/c.	50,000	
4)	Goods Purchases and sales.	46,000	12,000
5)	Goods returns a/c.s	.....	2,000
6)	Mohan's a/c.	.....	13,000
7)	Furniture a/c.	10,000	.....
8)	Stationery a/c.	1,000	.....
9)	Rangaraj's a/c.	.....	4,000
10)	Postage a/c.	150	.....
11)	Transportation charges a/c.	800	.....
12)	Wages	2,500	.....
13)	Salaries	2,500	.....
		1,31,000	1,31,000

Know this :

- In ledger for every account one page or more pages are allotted according to transactions.
- In J.F. column the page of the Journal entry where the ledger a/c., found is entered.

Note : When the 'Dr' side total and 'Cr' side total in trial balance is same. The transfer of entries are correct.

Final Accounts

Trial Balance is prepared to ascertain the arithmetical accuracy of ledger accounts. After ascertaining the arithmetical accuracy of Ledger, Final accounts are prepared. Final accounts are also termed as Financial statements.

Final accounts generally consist of two statements.

1. Trading and profit and loss a/c.
2. Balance sheet.

Trading and profit and loss account may be divided into two accounts namely (a) Trading account (b) Profit and loss account. They may be prepared separately, but general practice is that they are prepared together. Trading account gives the result of buying and selling. It includes all the expenses incurred for buying and selling or for manufacturing goods. The result is Gross profit or Gross loss. Profit and Loss account contains Gross profit or gross loss, brought down from trading account and also all the Expenses or Losses and all gains or profits which are of non trading items. Balance sheet is a statement contains all Assets and Liabilities. The permanent assets lose their value every year. It is called Depreciation. It is deducted from the asset and shown as a loss. The total debit and credit balances of personal accounts except capital account and Bank account are shown together. The total debit balances of personal accounts represents as 'Sundry Debtors' and total credit balances represents as 'Sundry Creditors'. In the trial balance bank balance is shown as cash at Bank and capital account is shown as capital. The difference between assets & liabilities is called capital.

Trading and Profit and loss a/c. of Rajan for the period ending 30th Sept. 2012.**Dr.****Cr.**

Particulars	Amt. in Rs.	Amt. in Rs.	Particulars	Amt. in Rs.	Amt. in Rs.
To Goods Purchases	46,000		By Goods sales	12,000	12,000
Less Returns	2,000	44,000	less Returns	***	
“Transport Expenses		800	“Closing Balance		38,000
To Gross Profit Tr. to P/l a/c		5,200	(ascertained)		
		50,000			50,000
To Stationery a/c.		1,000	By Trade Profit		5,200
“Postage		150	(transferred from trading a/c.)		
“Wages		2,500	By Net Loss		
“Salaries		2,500	Transferred to capital a/c.		950
		6150			6150

Balance sheet of Rajan as on Sept. 2012

Liabilities	Amt. in Rs.	Amt. in Rs.	Assets	Amt. in Rs.	Amt. in Rs.
Sundry debtors		17,000	Cash on hand		18,050
Capital	1,00,000		Cash at Bank		50,000
Less Net Loss	950	99,050	Furniture		10,000
		1,16,050	Closing Stock		38,000
					1,16,050

EXERCISES**1. Fill in the blanks with appropriate words in the following sentences.**

- The book in which the daily business transactions are recorded is called.....
- The transaction. “Paid salaries” comes under kind of accounts
- The Modern and scientific method of maintaining accounts is called..... system of Book keeping.

4. The difference between the debit and credit side of an account is called.....
5. The two accounts of “commenced business with cash are” and
6. The profit earned by Trade is transferred to a/c
7. “The permanent assets lose a portion of their value every year” it is called
8. The difference between Assets and Liabilities of a Trade is called

II. Answer the following questions.

1. Which is the book of original entry in Accounting? Why is it called the book of original entry?
2. What are the types of Accounts? Give examples.
3. What is the need for accounting in business?
4. What is Double-entry system of book keeping?
5. Which are the final accounts? What is the result of Profit and loss account?
6. “There is no need to find out the balance of goods sold account and goods purchases a/c ? why ?
7. What is the result of depreciation of fixed assets ?
8. Mention the two accounts of the following transactions and give the rule for debiting and crediting of them.
 - (a) Shivaraj started business.
 - (b) Bought goods from Mohan
 - (c) Goods returned to Rajesh
 - (d) Paid rent for premises.

9. Record the following transaction in Journal and transfer them to ledger.

Date	Particulars	Rs.
2009 Jan 1.	Started business	1,00,000
2009 Jan 2.	Amount remitted to Bank	50,000
2009 Jan 3	Bought goods for cash	20,000
2009 Jan 4	Bought goods from Mohan	15,000
2009 Jan 5	Paid for transportation charges	250
2009 Jan 15	Paid postage	250
2009 Jan 20	Paid salary	1000
2009 Jan 25	Sold goods to Ramesh	2000
2009 Jan 26	Sold goods for cash	7500
2009 Jan 30	Paid Rent of the Premises	2500
